

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	Before driving	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	When driving	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	Interior features	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	Maintenance and care	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	When trouble arises	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	Vehicle specifications	Detailed vehicle information.
7	For owners	Reporting safety defects for US owners and seat belt instructions for Canadian owners.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

1 Before driving

- 1-1. Key information**
Keys 22
- 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors**
Wireless remote control 24
Side doors 26
Back door 31
- 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)**
Front seats 34
Rear seats 36
Driving position memory system 45
Head restraints 47
Seat belts 49
Steering wheel 57
Inside rear view mirror 58
Outside rear view mirrors 59
- 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof**
Power windows 61
Moon roof 64
- 1-5. Refueling**
Opening the fuel tank cap 67

1-6. Theft deterrent system

- Engine immobilizer system 70
Alarm 72
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.) 74

1-7. Safety information

- Correct driving posture 75
SRS airbags 77
Front passenger occupant classification system 90
Child restraint systems 95
Installing child restraints 99

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

- Driving the vehicle 112
Engine (ignition) switch 120
Automatic transmission 123
Turn signal lever 126
Parking brake 127
Horn 128

2-2. Instrument cluster

- Gauges and meters 129
Indicators and warning lights ... 132
Trip information display 135

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers	
Headlight switch.....	138
Fog light switch.....	140
Windshield wipers and washer.....	141
Rear window wiper and washer.....	144
2-4. Using other driving systems	
Cruise control.....	145
Four-wheel drive system.....	149
Rear height control air suspension.....	152
Electronic modulated suspension.....	159
DAC (Downhill Assist Control system).....	160
Driving assist systems.....	162
2-5. Driving information	
Off-road precautions.....	166
Cargo and luggage.....	171
Vehicle load limits.....	177
Winter driving tips.....	179
Trailer towing.....	183
Dinghy towing.....	196

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger	
Automatic air conditioning system.....	198
Rear cooler system.....	205
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers.....	206
3-2. Using the audio system	
Audio system type.....	208
Using the radio.....	210
Using the CD player.....	218
Playing MP3 and WMA discs.....	225
Optimal use of the audio system.....	231
Using the AUX adapter.....	234
Using the steering switches.....	235
3-3. Using the rear audio system	
Rear seat entertainment system features.....	238
Using the DVD player (DVD video).....	243
Using the DVD player (video CD).....	250
Using the DVD player (audio CD/CD text).....	252
Using the DVD player (MP3 discs).....	253
Using the video mode.....	255

TABLE OF CONTENTS | Index

Changing the initial setting	256	Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior.....	317
3-4. Using the interior lights		4-2. Maintenance	
Interior lights list.....	263	Maintenance requirements	320
3-5. Using the storage features		General maintenance.....	322
List of storage features.....	266	Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs	325
3-6. Other interior features		4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance	
Sun visors.....	271	Do-it-yourself service precautions	326
Vanity mirror	272	Hood.....	329
Clock.....	273	Engine compartment.....	330
Outside temperature display	275	Tires	345
Ashtrays	276	Tire inflation pressure.....	352
Cigarette lighter	278	Wheels.....	356
Power outlet	279	Air conditioning filter.....	358
Seat heaters.....	281	Wireless remote control battery.....	360
Armrest	283	Rear seat entertainment system controller	362
Floor mats.....	284	Checking and replacing fuses.....	364
Luggage compartment features.....	285	Light bulbs	374
Garage door opener	288		
Compass.....	293		
Lexus Link System	297		

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care	
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior	314

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information	
Emergency flashers.....	382
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....	383

If you think something is wrong	388
Fuel pump shut off system	389
Event data recorder	390

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... ..	392
If you have a flat tire.....	402
If the engine will not start	413
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	414
If you lose your keys.....	415
If the vehicle battery is discharged	416
If your vehicle overheats	419
If the vehicle becomes stuck ...	422

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....	424
Fuel information.....	434
Tire information.....	437

6-2. Customization

Customizable features	449
-----------------------------	-----

6-3. Initialization

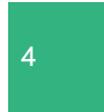
Items to initialize	452
---------------------------	-----

7 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners.....	454
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French).....	455

Index

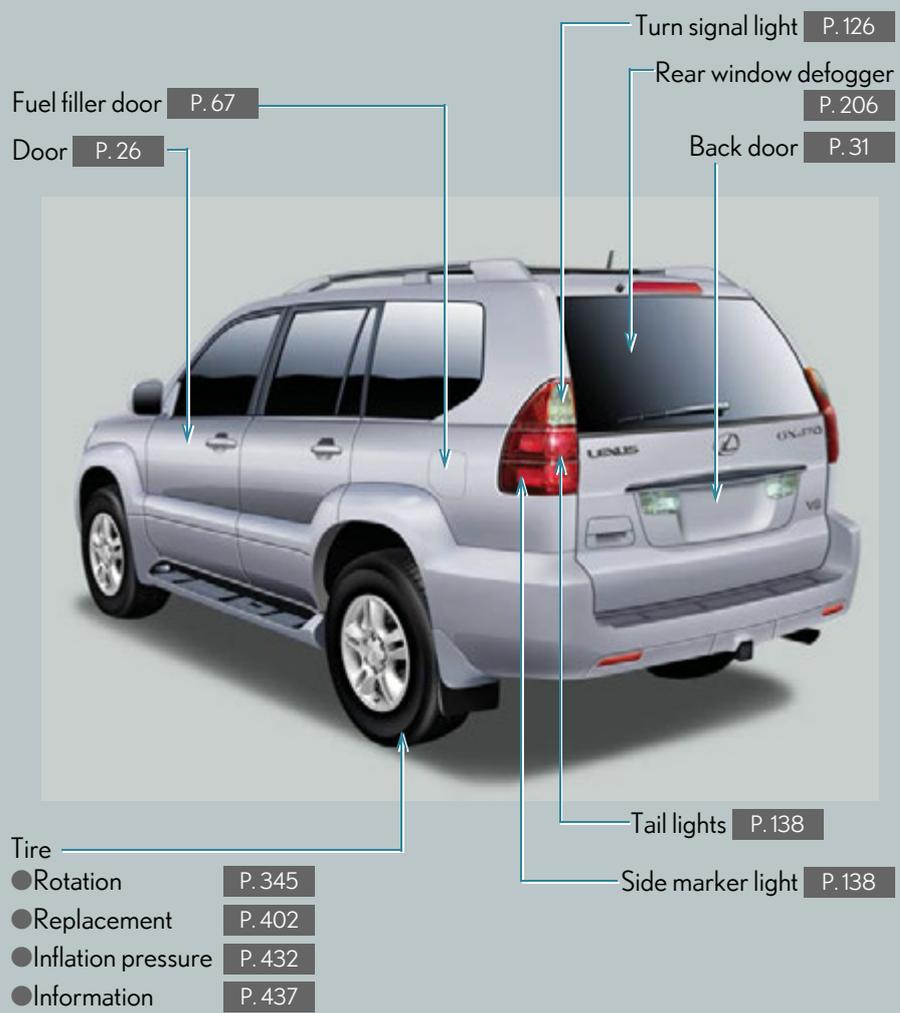
Abbreviation list	458
Alphabetical index.....	460
What to do if... ..	468



Pictorial index

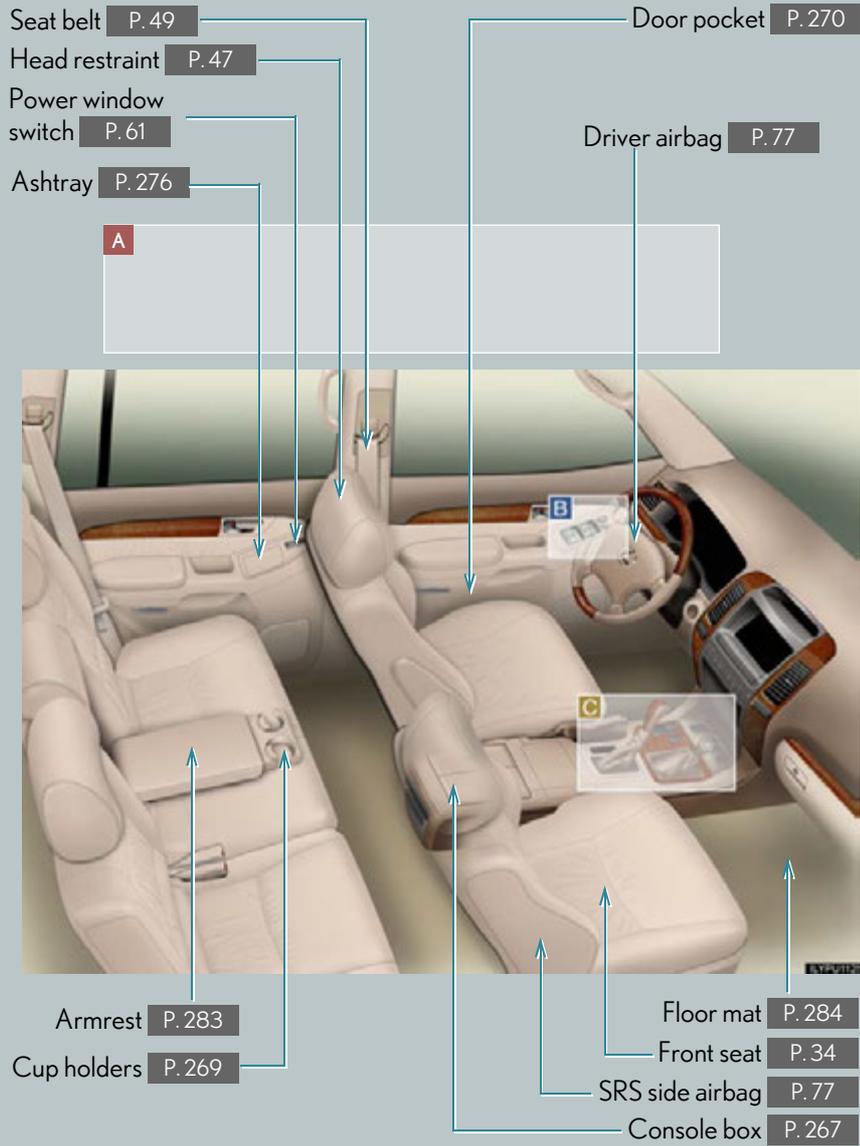
Exterior





Pictorial index

Interior



A

Lexus Link System switches* P. 297

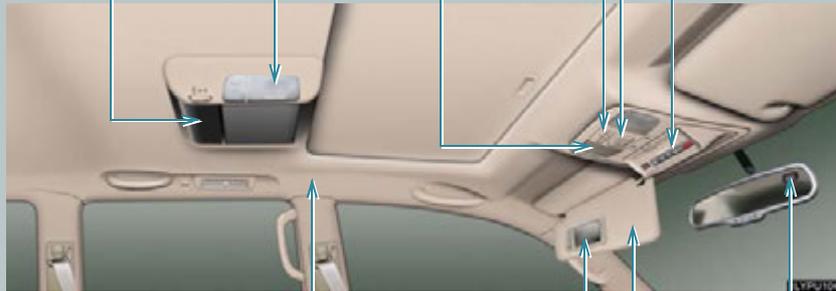
Moon roof switch P. 64

Garage door opener switches P. 288

Personal light P. 264

Interior light P. 265

Rear seat entertainment system* P. 238



SRS curtain shield airbag P. 77

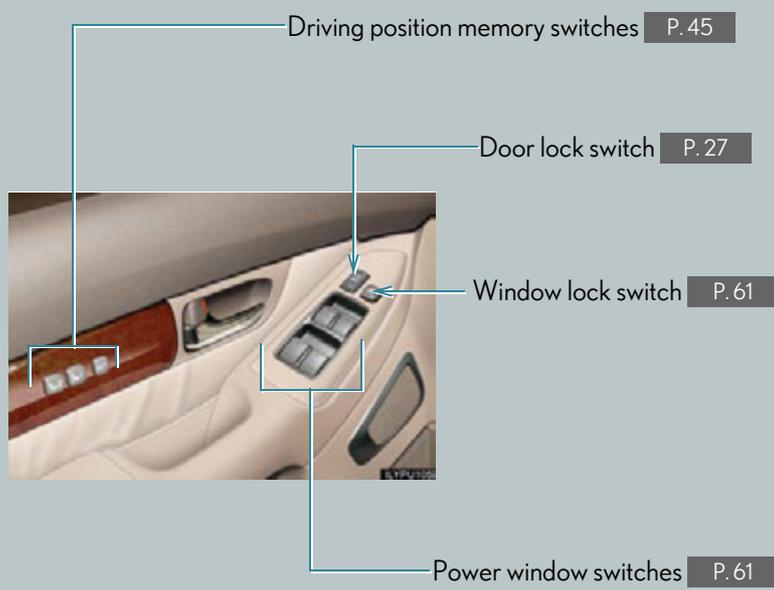
Vanity mirror P. 272

Sun visor P. 271

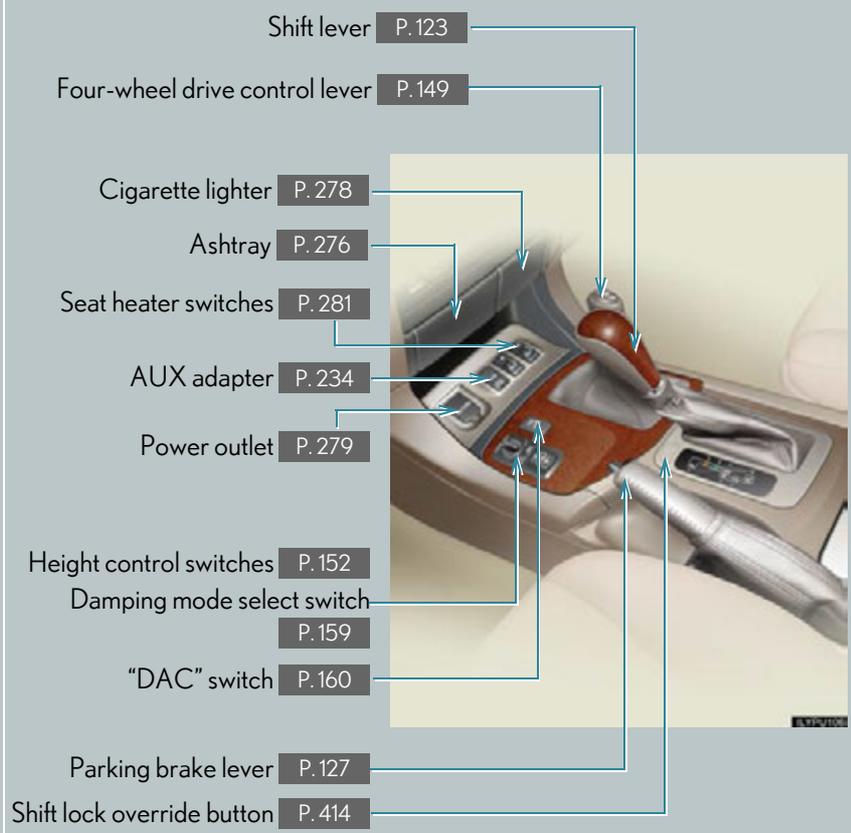
Compass P. 293

*: If equipped

B



C



A



Audio remote control switches P. 235

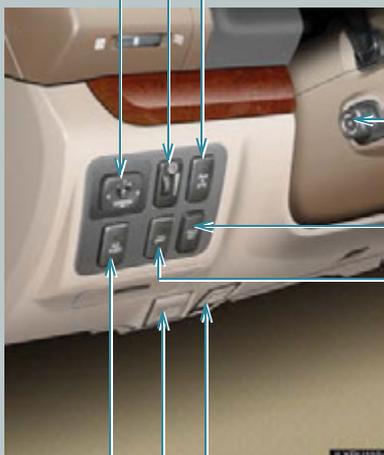
B

Automatic transmission second start switch P. 124



Tire pressure warning select switch P. 347

D



Outside rear view mirror switches P. 59

Instrument panel light control P. 130

Center differential lock switch P. 150

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 57

"RSCA OFF" switch P. 89

Outside rear view mirror heater switch P. 206

Hood lock release lever P. 329

Fuel filler door lever P. 67

Power outlet switch P. 279

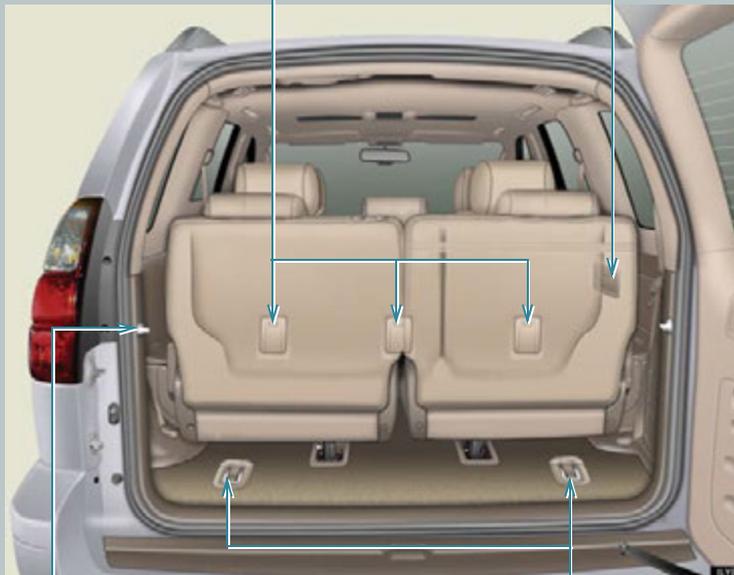
*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Pictorial index

Luggage compartment

Child restraint anchor brackets P. 106

Power outlet P. 279

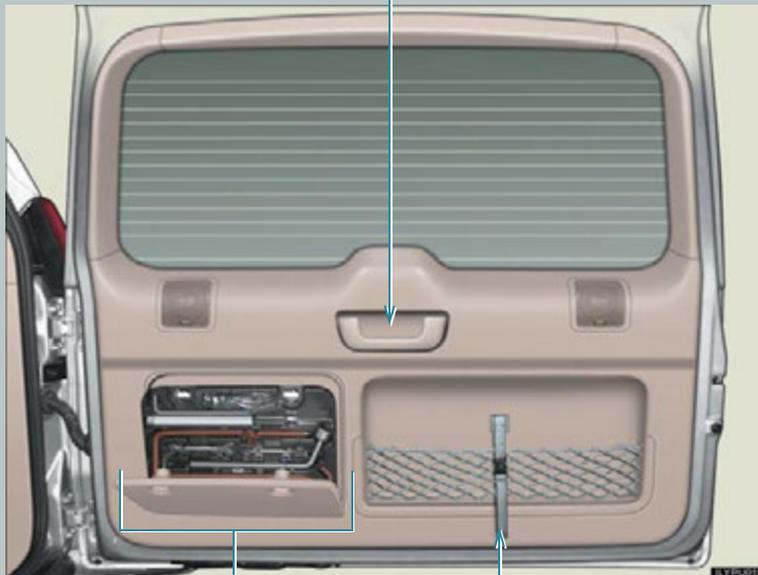


Cargo net hook P. 285

Cargo hooks P. 285

A

Back door handle



Tools P. 402

Warning reflector holder P. 286

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

When left unattended, children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations



Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



Arrows indicating operations

-  Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
-  Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

1-1. Key information

Keys..... 22

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Wireless remote control 24

Side doors..... 26

Back door 31

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Front seats 34

Rear seats 36

Driving position memory system 45

Head restraints 47

Seat belts 49

Steering wheel..... 57

Inside rear view mirror 58

Outside rear view mirrors 59

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 61

Moon roof 64

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap..... 67

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system.... 70

Alarm..... 72

Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)..... 74

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 75

SRS airbags 77

Front passenger occupant classification system..... 90

Child restraint systems 95

Installing child restraints..... 99

1-1. Key information

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



■ When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 266)

Carry the master key for your own use and leave the valet key only with the attendant.

■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 415)

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent key damage**

- Do not bend the keys, expose them to high temperatures by placing them in direct sunlight, or get them wet.
- Do not expose the keys to electromagnetic materials or attach any material that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.

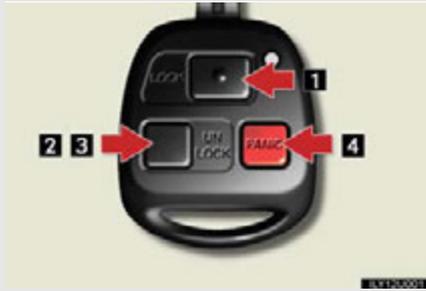
1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

Pushing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (push and hold)

4 Sounds alarm (push and hold) (→P. 73)

■ Operation indicator

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds when the windows and moon roof begin to open.

■ Door lock buzzer

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the theft deterrent system automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ Low battery

If the wireless remote control does not function or if it only operates very close to the vehicle, the battery may be low. (→P. 360)

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. 2-step unlocking function, buzzer) can be changed. (Customizable features→P. 449)

■ **Certification for wireless remote control (for vehicles sold in the U.S.A.)**

FCC ID: HYQ1512V FCC ID: HYQ13BBL

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

■ **Certification for wireless remote control (for vehicles sold in Canada)**

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions; (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.



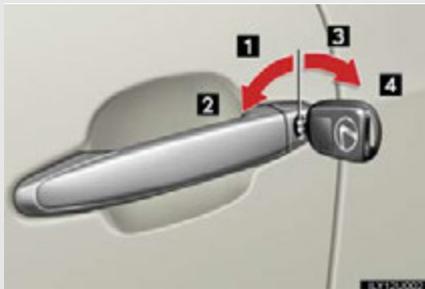
Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the wireless remote control, a key or door lock switch.

■ Key



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)
- 3 Unlocks all doors

Turning the key unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

- 4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)

■ Wireless remote control

→P. 24

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

■ Door lock switch



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors



■ Inside lock button



- 1 Locks the door
- 2 Unlocks the door



The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down rear door switches to lock the rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

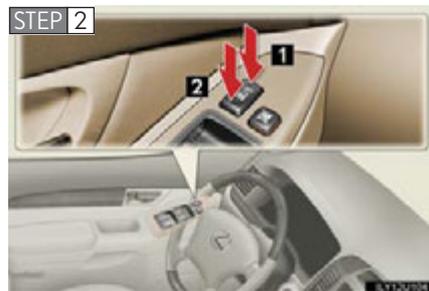
The following functions can be set or canceled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the engine switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

STEP 1 Close all the doors and turn the engine switch to the “ON” position. (Perform step 2 within 10 seconds.)



STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”, press and hold the driver’s door lock switch (1 or 2) for 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows.

Function	Shift lever position	Switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	“P”	1
Shift position linked door unlocking function		2
Speed linked door locking function	“N”	1
Driver’s door linked door unlocking function		2

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

■ Locking the front doors from outside using the inside lock button

Move the inside lock button to the lock position and close the door.

■ If the wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate the inside mechanism.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 449)

CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.

- Always lock all doors.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.

- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.

The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.

Be especially careful for the front doors, the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.

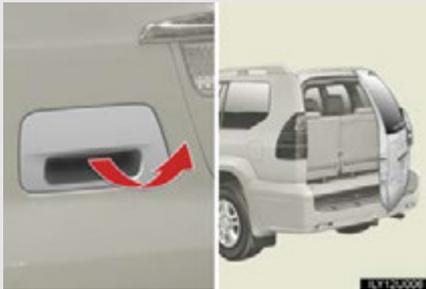
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Back door

The back door can be opened to the following positions:

- ▶ Half open position



- ▶ Full open position



You can hold the back door in this position using the back door stopper.

When closing the door, be sure to unlock the back door stopper.

1

Before driving

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Rear step bumper



For rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

■ The back door can be locked/unlocked

Using wireless remote control: →P. 24

Using door lock switch: →P. 27

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
This not only keeps personal belongings from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.
- Do not get on the rear step bumper.

■ If the back door is opened while parked

The open back door hides the rear lights. Other road users must be warned of the presence of your vehicle by a warning triangle or other device.

■ When closing the back door

Make sure not to get your hands caught in the back door stopper.

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the rear step bumper**
Do not allow more than one person to get on at a time.

1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Front seats



1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

CAUTION

■ Reclining adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.

If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Rear seats

To adjust the seat back angle, pull the lock release lever.

► Second seats



► Third seats (if equipped)



1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Tumbling the second seat (for third seat entry)

Vehicles with third seat: For easy access to the third seat, tumble the second seat in accordance with the following procedure.

■ Before tumbling the second seat



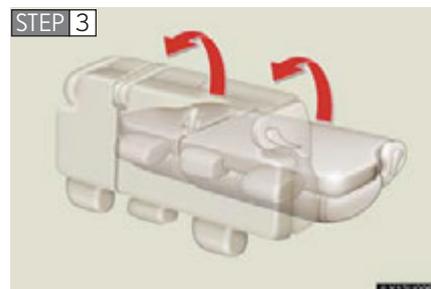
Stow the rear seat belt buckles.

■ Tumbling the second seat

STEP 1 Lower the head restraints to the lowest position.



Fold down the seatbacks while pulling the lock release levers.



Swing the seat up and forward until it locks in place.

1
Before driving

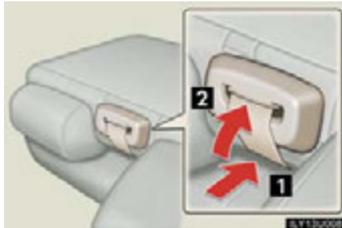
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ Returning the second seat



Push the red knobs and swing the seat down, then raise the seatbacks.

■ If you cannot raise the left side seatback



Release the seat belt lock by:

- 1 Pushing on the lower front edge of the seatback to slacken the seat belt.
- 2 Let the seat belt retract a little.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Folding up the third seats

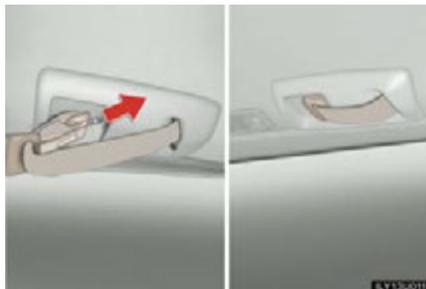
■ Before folding up the third seats



Stow the rear seat belt buckles.



Use the seat belt hangers to prevent the belts from becoming tangled.



For the center seat belt, stow the seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof as shown.

1

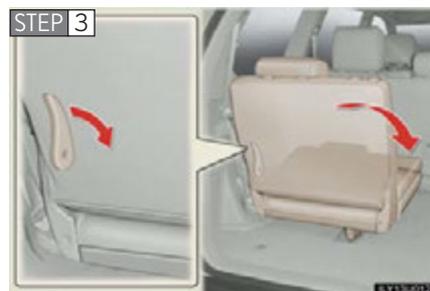
Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

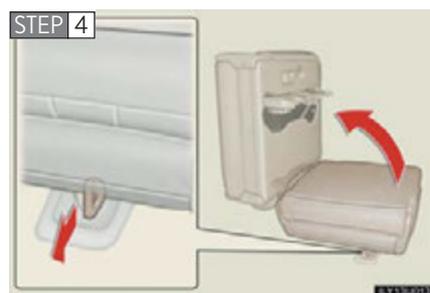
■ Folding up the third seats

STEP 1 Lower the outboard head restraint to the lowest position and remove the center head restraint.

STEP 2 Stow the center head restraint in the seatback. (→P. 48)



Unlock the seatbacks by pushing the lock release levers forward, and fold them down.

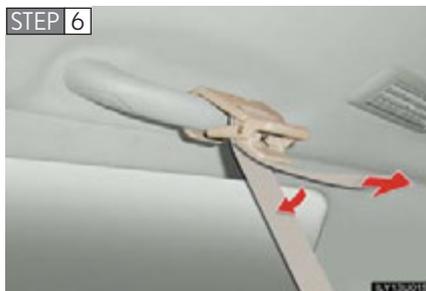


Unlock the seat legs by pulling the seat leg lock release handles, and lift the seats sideward.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)



Retract the seat legs, then take the holding straps out and attach the straps to the assist grips.



Pull the free end of the straps to the secure the seats.

1

Before driving

■ When returning the third seat to its original position

Reverse the steps listed.

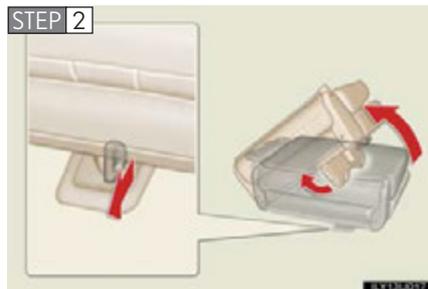


Be sure to stow the holding straps as shown.

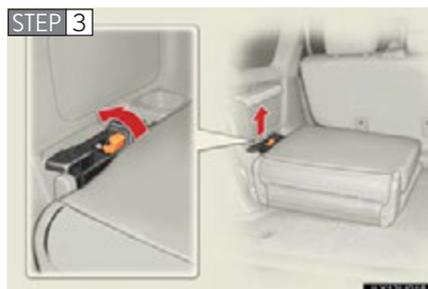
1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Removing the third seats

STEP 1 Follow the procedure for “Folding up the third seats” up to STEP 3.



Unlock the seat legs by pulling the seat leg lock release handles, and lift the seats. Retract the seat legs, then place the seats on the floor.



Remove the seat lock cover and push the red seat lock release knobs outward, then lift the seats free.

■ When returning the third seat to its original position

Reverse the steps listed.

 CAUTION

■ **Reclining adjustment**

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.

If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

■ **When the seatback is folded**

Do not sit on or place anything on the seatback while driving.

■ **When returning the seatbacks to their original position**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Be careful not to get your hands or feet pinched in the seat.
- Make sure the seats are securely locked. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

■ **When folding up the third seats**

Fix the seats securely by adjusting the length of the holding strap. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ **When removing or reinstalling the third seats**

Observe the following precautions to prevent personal injury:

- Do not remove or reinstall the seats while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not leave the removed seat loose in the vehicle.
- Be careful not to get your hands or feet pinched in the seats.
- Be careful not to hit a person with the removed seat or drop it on yourself.
- Do not sit on or place anything on the removed seat.
- Install each seat in the same position from which it was removed. Failure to do so will prevent third seat occupants from using the seat belts properly.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

 NOTICE

■ **Before tumbling, folding up or removing the seats**

The seat belts and buckles must be stowed.

■ **Before tumbling the second seats**

The headphone jack lid of the rear seat entertainment system must be closed.

■ **Removed third seats**

Avoid putting heavy loads on the seats. The metallic tips of the seat legs may be damaged, and you may be unable to correctly reinstall the seats.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Driving position memory system

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button.

Two different driving positions can be entered into memory.

■ Entering a position into memory

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the "ON" position.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3



While pushing the "SET" button, push button "1" or "2" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the "ON" position.

STEP 2



Push button "1" or "2" to recall the desired position.

■ Retained accessory power

Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be activated within 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened, even if the key is not in the engine switch.

■ If any position memory button is pushed while the adjustments are being made

The operation will stop. To reactivate the system, push the button again.

■ If the battery is disconnected

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the battery is disconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

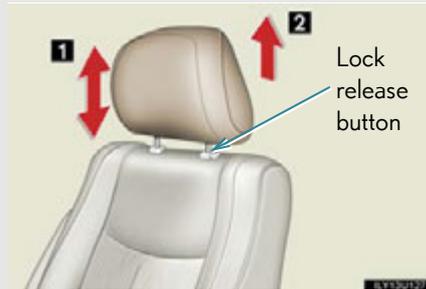
■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another seat position memory button.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.) Head restraints

■ Vertical adjustment



1 Grip the head restraint and move it up or down.

Push and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

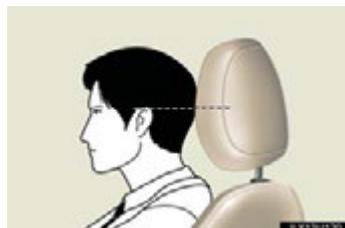
2 Grip the head restraint and remove while holding the lock release button.

■ Horizontal adjustment



Grip the head restraint and twist to tilt forward or backward.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

1

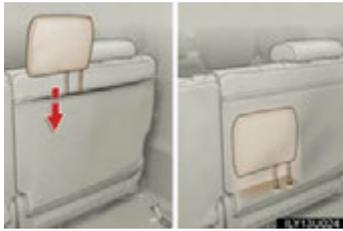
Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ When an occupant sits on the second center seat

Always pull up the head restraint to the lock position.

■ When not using the third center seat head restraint (vehicles with third seat)



Open the zipper on the back of the third seat and stow the head restraint inside.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.) Seat belts

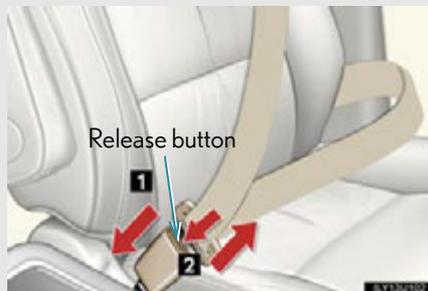
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts



- 1 Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- 2 Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- 3 Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- 4 Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt

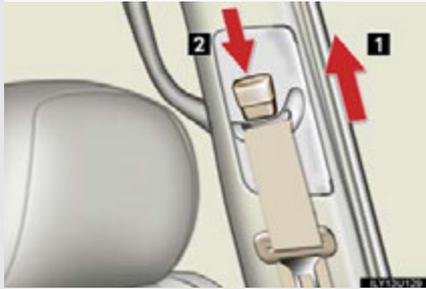


- 1 Fastening the belt
Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.
- 2 Releasing the belt
Press the release button.

1
Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ Adjusting the height of the belt (front and second outboard seats)



- 1 Up
- 2 Down

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Third center seat belt (vehicles with third seats)

The third center seat belt is a 3-point type restraint with 2 buckles. Both seat belt buckles must be correctly located and securely latched for proper operation.

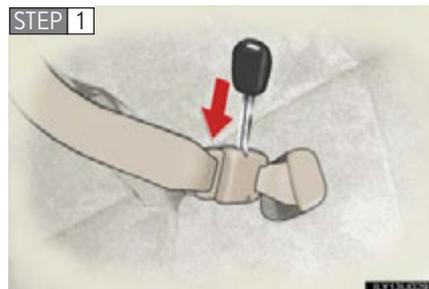


Make sure that the buckle with the light gray buckle release button is securely latched for ready use of the center seat belt.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ Release method

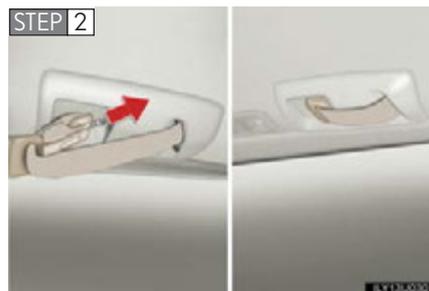
The belt can be completely released when not required, such as when removing the third seat.



To release the hooked tab, insert the vehicle's key into the hole on the buckle with the light gray buckle release button.

1

Before driving



Stow the seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof as shown.

■ Extracting the belt

Pull the belt out partially, then remove the tabs from the cover.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

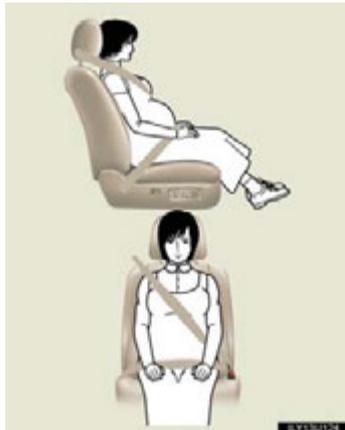
The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around fully.

■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P.105)

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 49)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

1

Before driving

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 49)

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriately for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 95)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 49 regarding seat belt usage.

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at the same time, including children.
- Children should be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in a collision. (→P. 50)

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the seat belt becomes locked: it cannot be further extended, nor will it return to the stowed position. The seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ Child restraint lock function belt

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

CAUTION

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of a seat belt. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may cause it to activate or operate improperly and may cause death or serious injury.

1

Before driving

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

CAUTION

■ When using the third center seat belt



Do not use the third center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

NOTICE

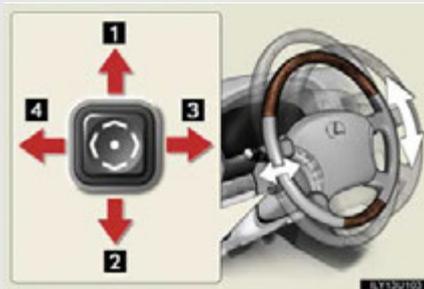
■ When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Toward the driver
- 4 Away from the driver

1

Before driving

Auto tilt away and auto return



When the ignition key is removed, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

When the key is inserted in the engine switch, the steering wheel will return to the original position.

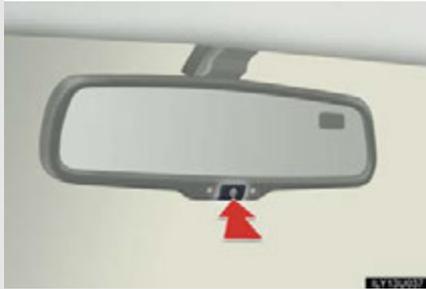
⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.) Inside rear view mirror

In the auto mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.

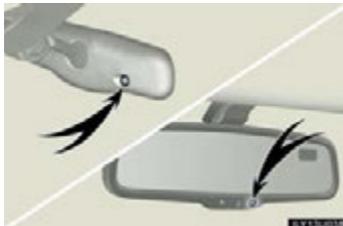


Press the button for longer than 3 seconds to turn auto mode on/off.

The indicator comes on when auto mode is turned ON.

The anti-glare mirror is automatically set to auto mode whenever the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position.

■ To prevent sensor error



To ensure correct functioning of the sensors, do not touch or cover the sensors.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.



- 1 Select the mirror to adjust ("L": left or "R": right)
- 2 Adjust the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

1

Before driving

Folding the mirrors



Push backward

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror heaters to defog the mirrors. (→P. 206)

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing**

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (neither "L" nor "R" selected).

■ **One-touch adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and adjusted with the touch of a button. (→P. 45)

CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in losing control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Before driving, be sure to extend the mirrors and adjust properly.

■ **When the mirror heaters are operating**

Do not touch the mirror surface as the mirror surface becomes hot.

NOTICE

■ **If ice should jam the mirror**

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

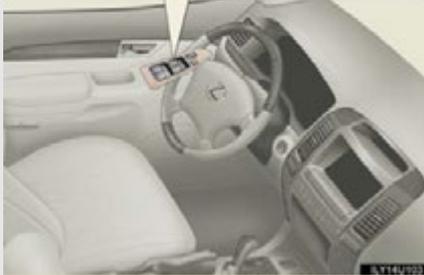
Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.



1

Before driving

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Linked door lock window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the key. (→P. 26)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 24)

■ Retained accessory power operation

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. They cannot, however, be operated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The power windows must be initialized in order to ensure proper operation.
(Perform for each window with the switch for each seat.)

STEP 1 Open the window halfway.

STEP 2 Fully close the window by pulling the switch up and continue holding the switch for 1 second.

The indicator on the switch changes from a flashing pattern to being on when initialization are complete.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 449)

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

CAUTION

■ When closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

1

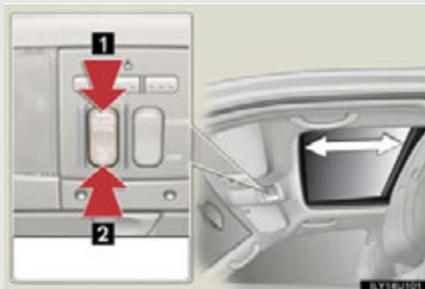
Before driving

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

■ Opening and closing

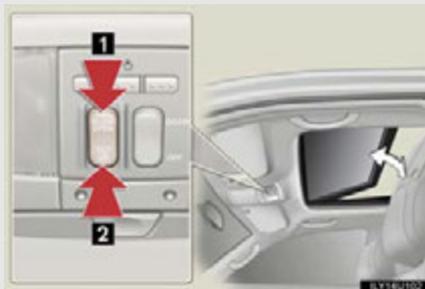


1 Open

2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

■ Tilt up and down



1 Tilt down

2 Tilt up

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Linked door lock moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the key. (→P. 26)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 24)

■ Retained accessory power operation

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically

Keep the switch depressed.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ When the battery is disconnected

The moon roof must be initialized in order to ensure proper operation.

STEP 1 Close the moon roof fully.

STEP 2 Hold down the "TILT UP" button until the moon roof tilts all the way up and then tilts down a little automatically.

STEP 3 To ensure initialization is complete, make sure automatic opening and closing functions work properly.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 449)

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

CAUTION

■ When opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ When closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

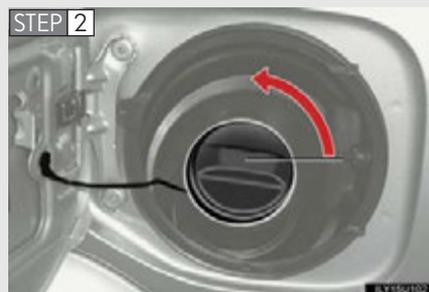
■ **Before refueling the vehicle**

Stop the engine and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

■ **Opening the fuel tank cap**



Pull the fuel filler door lever.

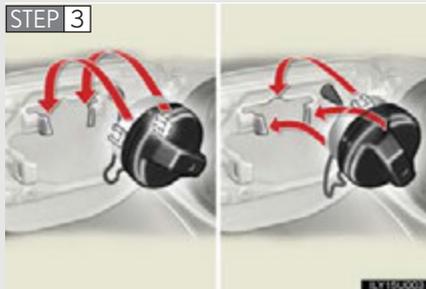


To remove the fuel tank cap, turn the cap slowly counter-clockwise, then pause slightly before removing it.

1

Before driving

1-5. Refueling



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



When installing the cap, turn it clockwise until one click is heard, in order to fully close it.

The cap returns slightly when your hand is released from the cap after closure, however this does not cause any problems.

■ Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane Rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

■ Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 23 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp. gal.)

⚠ CAUTION**■ When refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity. Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE**■ Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling. Failing to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

1

Before driving

1-6. Theft deterrent system Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned to the "LOCK" position to indicate that the system is operating.

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object.
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

■ Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: MOZRI-20BTY

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 CAUTION

■ **Certifications for the engine immobilizer system**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

 NOTICE

■ **For proper system operation**

Do not modify, remove or disable the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1

Before driving

1-6. Theft deterrent system Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.



To arm the alarm, exit the vehicle, make sure that the doors and hood are closed, and lock all the doors.

The system will operate automatically once the indicator begins to flashing.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following:

- Unlock the doors using the key or the wireless remote control.
- Start the engine.

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, check that there is no one in the vehicle, and that all windows and the moon roof are closed before locking the vehicle.

■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.

If the battery is discharged before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

■ Panic mode



When the “PANIC” button is pushed for longer than about 1 second, the headlights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, push any button on the wireless remote control.

1

Before driving

1-6. Theft deterrent system
Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)



These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



- 1 Sit upright and well back in the seat.
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 34)
- 3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the air-bag is facing your chest. (→P. 57)
- 5 Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 47)
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 49)

1
Before driving

 CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

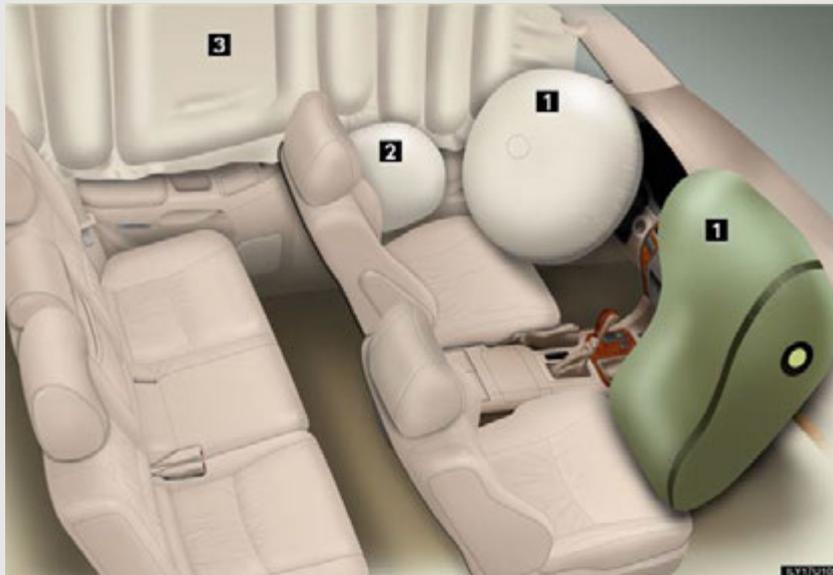
■ **Adjusting the seat position**

- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

1-7. Safety information

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

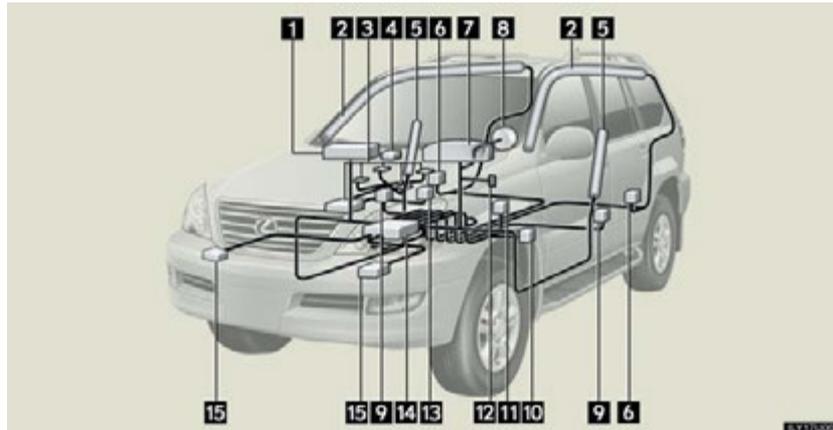


- ▶ Front airbags
 - ❶ Driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.
- ▶ Side and curtain shield airbags
 - ❷ Side airbag
Can help protect the torso of the front occupants.
 - ❸ Curtain shield airbag
Can help protect primarily the head of front occupants and rear out-board occupants.

1

Before driving

Airbag system components



- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Front passenger airbag | 8 Driver airbag |
| 2 Curtain shield airbag | 9 Side and curtain shield airbag sensor |
| 3 Occupant detection system (ECU and sensors) | 10 Driver's seat position sensor |
| 4 "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light | 11 Driver's seat belt buckle switch |
| 5 Side airbag | 12 "RSCA OFF" switch |
| 6 Curtain shield airbag sensor | 13 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch |
| 7 SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light | 14 Airbag sensor assembly |
| | 15 Front airbag sensor |

Your vehicle is equipped with "ADVANCED AIRBAGS" designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver's seat position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

■ Operating conditions (front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

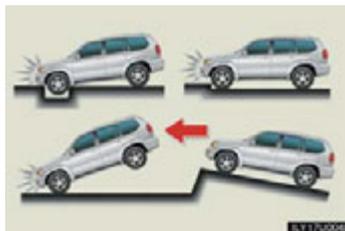
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate, if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy, if luggage is put in the seat or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 90)

■ Operating conditions (side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side.
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy, if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 90)

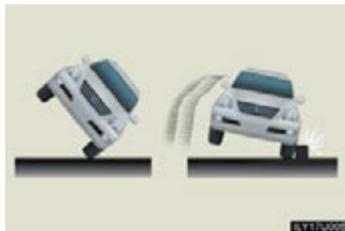
■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

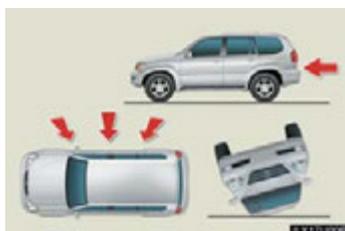
The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.



- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits a curb stone.

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)**

The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

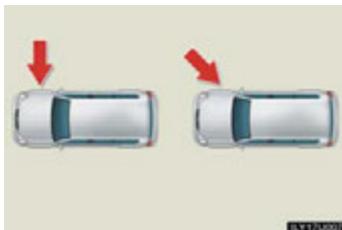
1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



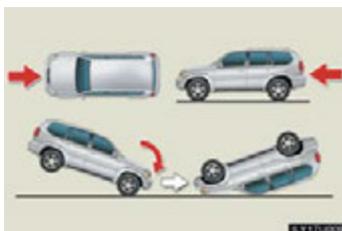
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

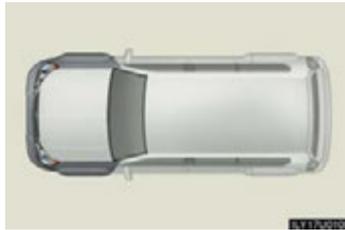


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitches end over end

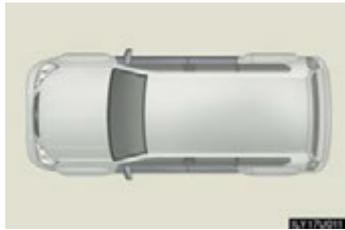
■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

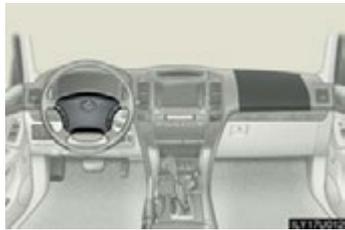
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel or front passenger airbag cover of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

1

Before driving

 CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:
 - Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
 - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
 - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
 - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

⚠ CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 95)

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard or steering wheel pad of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver and front passenger airbags deploy.
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 78. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

CAUTION

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

Deactivating the curtain shield airbags in a vehicle rollover



ON/OFF (Hold for a few seconds)

The "RSCA OFF" indicator light turns on. (Only when the engine switch is in the "ON" position.)

1

Before driving

■ **The switch only should be used**

In a situation where inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off-road driving).

■ **Operating conditions when the "RSCA OFF" indicator is on**

- The curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The curtain shield airbag will activate in a severe side impact.

⚠ CAUTION

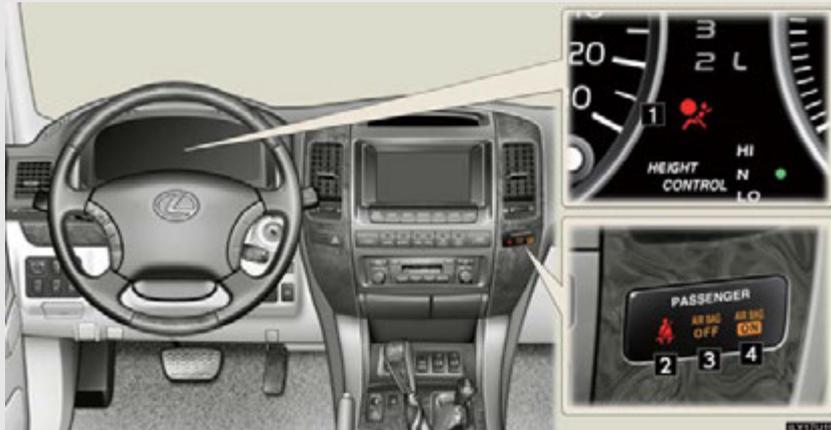
■ **For normal driving**

Make sure the "RSCA OFF" indicator light is not turned on. If it is left on, the curtain shield airbag will not activate in the event of an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

1-7. Safety information

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



- 1 SRS warning light
- 2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
- 3 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
- 4 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

■ Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

■ Child^{*3} or child restraint system^{*4}

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF" ^{*5}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing ^{*2}
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

1

Before driving

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illumi- nated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated

■ System malfunction

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

- *1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- *3: When a large child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 99)
- *5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 95)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. arm-rest).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the second seat.
- Do not let a second seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

1

Before driving

 CAUTION

■ **Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the “AIR BAG ON” indicator light is illuminated. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the “AIR BAG OFF” indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 99)
- Do not remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the second seat should not contact the front seatbacks.

1-7. Safety information

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

1

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 99)

Before driving

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

- ▶ Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat



1-7. Safety information

▶ Forward facing—Convertible seat



▶ Booster seat



■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 49)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

1-7. Safety information

CAUTION

■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.

If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

1-7. Safety information

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the rear seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.



1 Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the right side second seat and between the center and left side second seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



2 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 52)



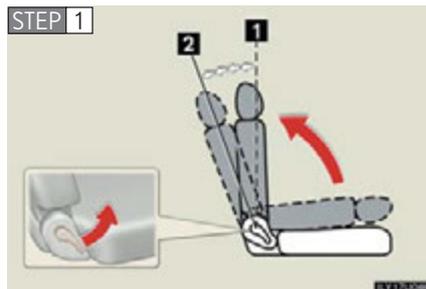
3 Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all second seats.

1

Before driving

Installation with LATCH system



Fold the seatback forward and then back to the 1st lock position (most upright position) until it locks into place. Adjust the seatback to the 5th lock position.

- 1 1st lock position
- 2 5th lock position

► Type A



STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 3 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

► Type B



STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

1

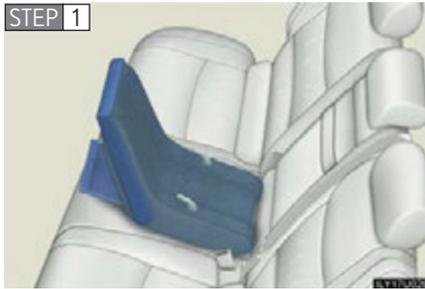
Before driving

1-7. Safety information

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

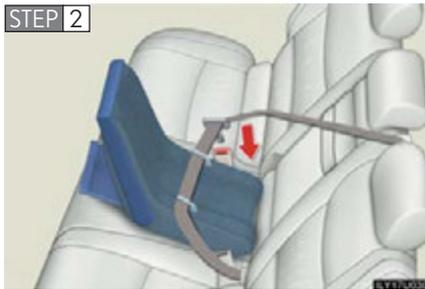
■ Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



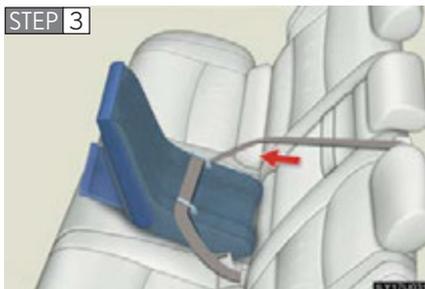
Place the child seat on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



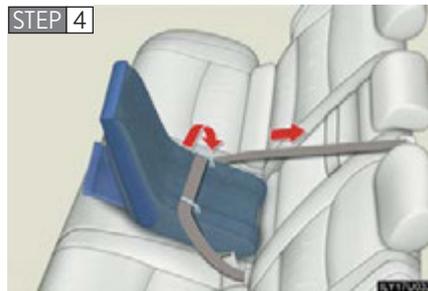
Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.



While pushing the child seat down into the seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Forward facing — Convertible seat



Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



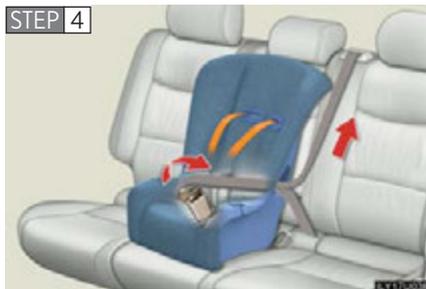
Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information



While pushing the child seat into the seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 5 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 106)

■ Booster seat



Place the booster seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Sit the child in the booster seat. Fit the seat belt to the booster seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 49)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

1

Before driving

Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

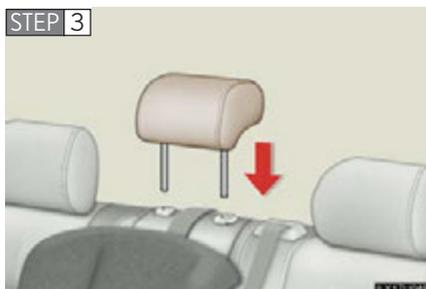


Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or lower anchors, and remove the head restraint.



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



Reinstall the head restraint.

■ Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When installing a booster seat**

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 52)

ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Only put a forward facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing or booster child seat on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system



- When installing a child restraint system in the third center position, set the both seatbacks to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be properly secured.

- When installing a child restraint system in the second or third center seat, adjust both seatbacks at the same angle.
- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure the belt and tab are securely locked and that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child seat from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchorages



- When using the left side lower anchorages for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center seat. Seat belt function may be impaired, such as being positioned overly high or loose-fitting, which may result in death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

1

Before driving

1-7. Safety information

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle.....	112
Engine (ignition) switch.....	120
Automatic transmission	123
Turn signal lever	126
Parking brake	127
Horn	128

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters.....	129
Indicators and warning lights	132
Trip information display	135

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch.....	138
Fog light switch	140
Windshield wipers and washer	141
Rear window wiper and washer	144

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control.....	145
Four-wheel drive system.....	149
Rear height control air suspension.....	152
Electronic modulated suspension.....	159
DAC (Downhill Assist Control system).....	160
Driving assist systems	162

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions	166
Cargo and luggage	171
Vehicle load limits.....	177
Winter driving tips	179
Trailer towing	183
Dinghy towing.....	196

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the engine (→P. 120)

■ Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to “D”.
(→P.123)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake.
(→P.127)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”.
(→P.123)

■ Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake.
(→P.127)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to “P”.
(→P.123)

STEP 4 Turn the engine switch to stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

Starting on a steep incline

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “D”.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):
 - Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km):
 - Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 600 miles (1000 km):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 426)

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
 - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
 - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
 - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
 - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R".
Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed.
Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to "P", "R" or "N" while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission system and may result in a loss of vehicle control.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not shift the shift lever to “N” while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so may cause insufficient engine braking and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.
The power steering and brake booster systems will not operate properly if the engine is off.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 125)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers’ arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and death or serious injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- If you drive through deep water over about 28 in. (700 mm) in depth, select the vehicle height in the “HI” (high) mode using the active height select switch and then turn off the active height control suspension by pushing the height control switch. Drive your vehicle at 19 mph (30 km/h) or slower.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
If the vehicle is in any gear other than "P" or "N" the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is running to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When the vehicle is parked**

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
Failure to do so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Exhaust gases

- Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, turn the engine off. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
 - The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off.

Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhill or sharp turns that require braking.

In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.

- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.

Each push on the pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.

- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.

Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

NOTICE

■ While driving the vehicle

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

 NOTICE

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 402)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

2-1. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch

■ Engine (ignition) switch



1 "LOCK":

The steering wheel is locked and the key can be removed. (The key can be removed only when the shift lever is in "P".)

2 "ACC":

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

3 "ON":

All electrical components can be used.

4 "START":

For starting the engine.

■ Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.

STEP 3 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 4 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

STEP 5 Turn the engine switch to the "START" position to start the engine.

■ Turning the key from "ACC" to "LOCK"



STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to "P".

STEP 2 Push in the key and turn to the "LOCK" position.

■ **Steering lock release**



When starting the engine, the engine switch may seem stuck in the "LOCK" position. To free it, turn the key while turning the steering wheel slightly in either direction.

■ **Starting the engine using the flat key**



Remove the flat key from its case. Insert the key into the engine switch.



Bring the key case close to the engine switch within 10 seconds as indicated by an arrow.

STEP 3 Put the key case away when the security indicator light goes out. This means the engine immobilizer system has turned off.

STEP 4 Start the engine within 60 seconds after the security indicator light goes off.

■ **Leak detection pump**

Several hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear a sound coming from underneath the luggage compartment for several minutes. This is normal operation and does not indicate a malfunction.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

Do not turn the engine switch to the "LOCK" position.
If in an emergency, you must turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving, turn the key to only to the "ACC" position.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the engine switch in the "ACC" or "ON" position for long periods without the engine running.

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race the cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

Automatic transmission

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

■ Shifting the shift lever



← While the engine switch is in the “ON” position, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*
4	Position for moderate engine braking
3, 2	Position for more powerful engine braking
L	Position for maximum engine braking

*: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the “D” position for normal driving.

2

When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

■ Selecting second start mode

Use the second start mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.



Press the "2nd STRT" switch.

To cancel the mode, press the switch again.

■ Downshifting restrictions

Keep the engine rpm from going into the red zone. The maximum allowable speed is as follows:

Downshifting	Transfer position	Maximum speed mph (km/h)
4→3	"H"	86 (139)
	"L"	33 (54)
3→2	"H"	58 (94)
	"L"	22 (36)
2→L	"H"	24 (40)
	"L"	9 (15)

2

When driving

■ When driving with the cruise control system

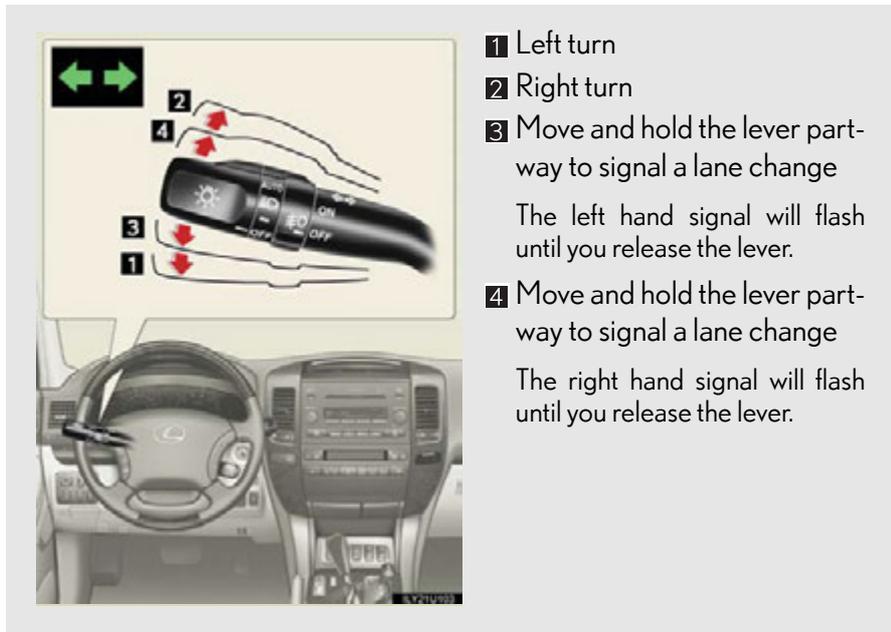
The engine brake will not operate when downshifting from "D" to "4". (→P.145)

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"

→P. 414

2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever



■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

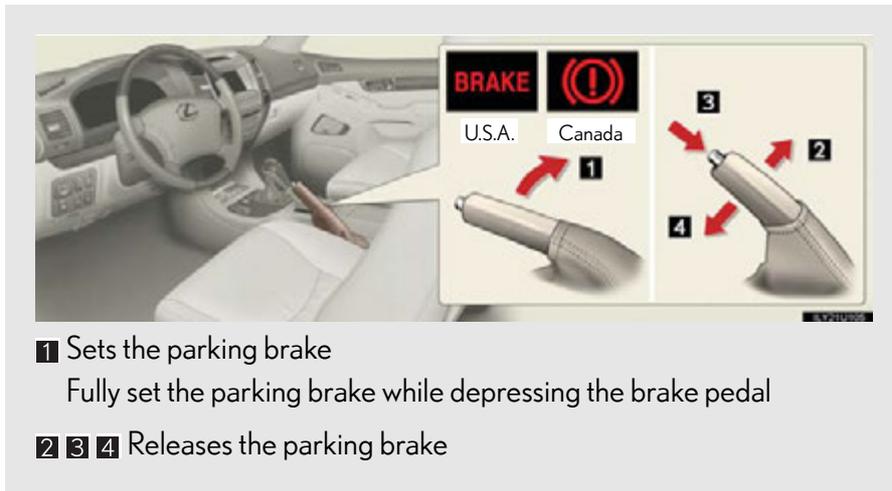
The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

2-1. Driving procedures

Parking brake



2

When driving

NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

2-1. Driving procedures

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the  mark.

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

The following gauges and meters illuminate when the engine switch is in the "ON" position.

- 1** Fuel gauge
Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
- 2** Speedometer
Displays the vehicle speed.
- 3** Tachometer
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.
- 4** Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the engine coolant temperature.
- 5** Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset knob
Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. Pushing and holding the knob will reset the trip meter when the trip meter is being displayed.

2

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster

6 Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Brighter

2 Darker

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 419)

2

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

► Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

► Center panel



Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
|  | Turn signal indicator
(→P. 126) |  | * "RSCA OFF" indicator
(→P. 89) |
|  | Headlight high beam indicator
(→P. 138) |  | * Downhill assist control system indicator
(→P. 160) |
|  | Headlight indicator
(→P. 138)
(U.S.A.) |  | * Engine oil replacement reminder light
(→P. 395)
(U.S.A.) |
|  | Tail light indicator
(→P. 138)
(Canada) |  | * Slip indicator
(→P. 163) |
|  | Security indicator
(→P. 70) |  | * "VSC OFF" indicator
(→P. 150) |
|  | Shift position indicators
(→P. 123) |  | * Center differential lock indicator
(→P. 150) |
|  | * Height control indicator
(→P. 153) |  | * "AIR BAG ON" indicator
(→P. 90) |
|  | Automatic transmission second start indicator
(→P. 124) |  | * "AIR BAG OFF" indicator
(→P. 90) |
|  | Cruise control indicator
(→P. 145) | | |

2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems. (→P. 392)



*: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is running, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you turn the engine switch to the "ON" position, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

2-2. Instrument cluster Trip information display

The trip information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.

▶ Trip information display



- Clock(→P. 273)
- Outside temperature display (→P. 275)
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption
- Driving range
- Average vehicle speed
- Barometer
- Altimeter
- Driving time



Display items can be switched by pushing the "MODE" button.

2

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster

Display light control

Push and hold the “MODE” button until “ILL” appears on the display. Push “▲” or “▼” to adjust the brightness.

You can adjust the brightness to 3 levels (when the tail lights are off) or 6 levels (when the tail lights are on).

Trip information

■ Driving range



Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

■ Average fuel consumption after refueling



Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

■ Current fuel consumption



Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

■ Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pushing the “RESET” button for longer than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

■ Barometer



Displays the atmospheric pressure in the vehicle.

The displayed atmospheric pressure ranges from 17.8 IN.HG (600 hPa) up to 31.0 IN.HG (1050 hPa).

■ Altimeter



Displays the approximate altitude.

The displayed altitude ranges from -1500 ft. (-500 m) up to 13000 ft. (4000 m).

■ Driving time



Displays the elapsed time after the engine starts.

When the engine is started, driving time is counted from 0:00.

Up to 19:59 (19 hours, 59 minutes) can be displayed.

2

When driving

■ Altimeter mode

The indicated altitude of a single position may deviate according to the atmospheric pressure and temperature.

While the altitude mode is displayed, push the “▲” or “▼” button to increase/ decrease the altitude by 50 ft. (or 10 m).

To reset the adjusted altitude, push and hold the “RESET” button for more than 1 second.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the display.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

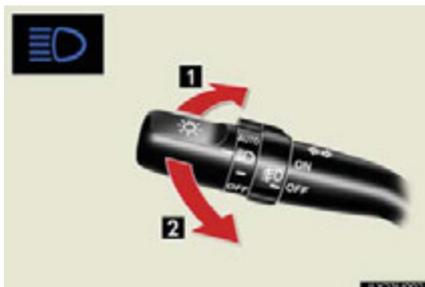


— The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

☰ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

AUTO The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically. (When the engine switch is in the "ON" position.)

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

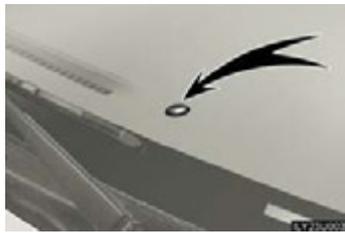
Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the front turn signal lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released.

■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ Automatic light off system

The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened or closed if the engine switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position while the headlights are turned on. (The lights turn off immediately if the "LOCK" button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to the "ON" position, or turn the light switch "OFF" once and then back to the  or  position.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 449)

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

2

When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.



- 1 OFF
- 2 ON

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Windshield wipers and washer

■ Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster (if equipped)

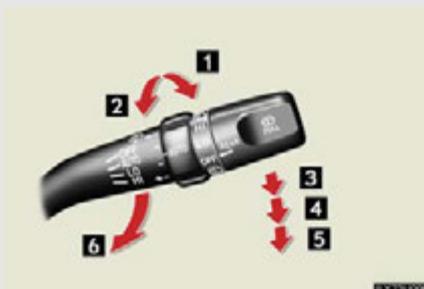
Wiper intervals can be adjusted for intermittent operation (when "INT" is selected).



- 1 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
- 2 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency
- 3 Intermittent wiper operation
- 4 Low speed wiper operation
- 5 High speed wiper operation
- 6 Wash/wipe operation

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped)

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



- 1 Sensor sensitivity (low)
- 2 Sensor sensitivity (high)
- 3 Rain-sensing wiper operation
- 4 Low speed wiper operation
- 5 High speed wiper operation
- 6 Wash/wipe operation

2

When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, the last sweep will not happen if the vehicle is traveling above 106 mph (170 km/h).

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in "AUTO" mode.

- Intermittent wiper interval ("INT" mode)
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

With "LO" selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

■ Rain drop sensor (vehicles equipped with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)



The sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

■ In extremely hot or cold weather

The system will turn off if the windshield gets extremely hot (more than 194°F [90°C]) or cold (less than 14°F [-10°C]).

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

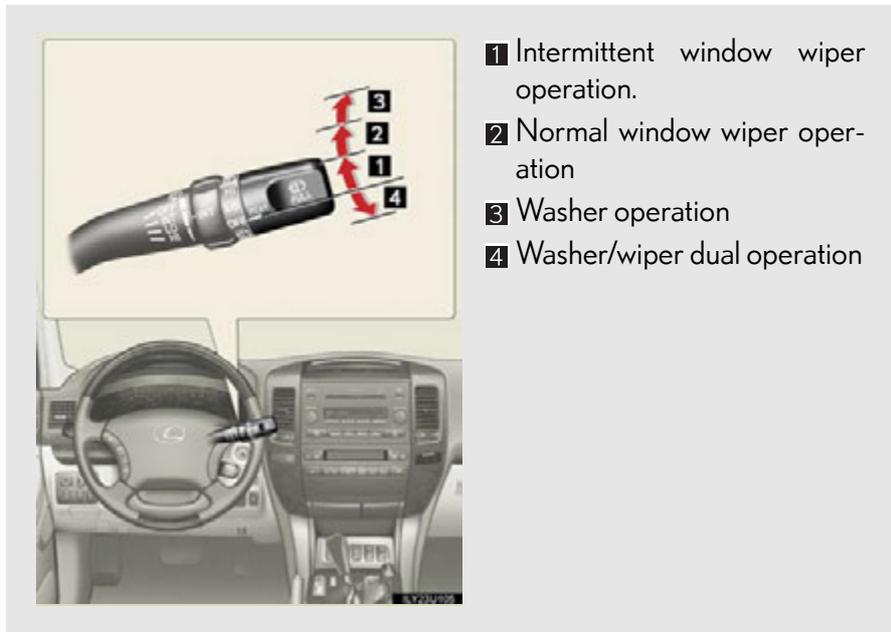
Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

2

When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Rear window wiper and washer



- **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**
The engine switch must be in the "ON" position.

 **NOTICE**

- **When the rear window is dry**
Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the rear window.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Cruise control switch

■ Set the vehicle speed



Turn the "ON-OFF" button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set the cruise control speed.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Adjusting the speed setting



- 1 Increase speed
- 2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

Fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

■ Canceling and resuming regular acceleration



- 1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

- 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in "D" or "4".
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) and 125 mph (200 km/h).

■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

The set speed is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
- Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated

■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Turn the "ON-OFF" button off once, and then reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause a serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
- On winding roads

2-4. Using other driving systems

Four-wheel drive system

Use the four-wheel drive control lever and center differential lock button to select following transfer and center differential modes.

► Four-wheel drive control lever



1 “L” (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving and hard pulling in sand or mud.

2 “N” (neutral position)

No power is delivered to the wheels.

3 “H” (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

► Center differential lock/unlock button



Use this button when your vehicle's wheel gets stuck in a ditch or when you are driving on a loose or bumpy surface.

■ The four-wheel drive control lever can be operated when

- The engine switch is in the "ON" position,
- The shift lever is in the "N" position, and
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

- **The center differential lock/unlock button can be operated when**
 - The engine switch is in the “ON” position, and
 - The four-wheel drive control lever is in the “H” or “L” position.
- **Locking/unlocking the center differential**
 - When the center differential is locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and “VSC OFF” indicator lights come on.)
 - If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not go off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
 - If center differential lock system operation is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is set, cancel the cruise control system.

 **CAUTION**

■ **While driving**

Never move the four-wheel drive control lever if the wheels are slipping. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

 **NOTICE**

■ **To prevent damage to the center differential**

- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the loose or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock/unlock button when the vehicle is cornering or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Rear height control air suspension

The rear height control air suspension adjusts the rear vehicle height in accordance with driving conditions. There are 3 selectable modes, "HI" (high), "N" (normal), and "LO" (low).

■ Height control switch



- 1 "▲" (Up) switch
- 2 "▼" (Down) switch
- 3 "OFF" switch

Push while the vehicle is stopped. The "OFF" indicator light will come on, and the vehicle height will be fixed in the current mode. Push the switch again to turn the system back on.

■ Height control indicator lights



- 1 Height control mode indicators
- 2 Height control "OFF" indicator

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

Vehicle height modes

Press “▲” to step up one mode, and “▼” to step down one mode.
(e.g. When in the low mode, press “▲” once to switch to the normal mode, and twice to switch to the high mode.)

■ “HI” (high) mode

Rear vehicle height is 1.6 in. (40 mm) higher than the normal mode height.

This mode is suitable when driving on bumpy roads or through water.
High mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h).

■ “N” (normal) mode

The standard vehicle height. This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.

■ “LO” (low) mode

Rear vehicle height is 0.8 in. (20 mm) lower than the normal mode height.

This mode allows easy access to the vehicle.

Low mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 7 mph (12 km/h).

Conditions for changing the vehicle height mode

Some modes may not be selectable depending on the vehicle speed.
Refer to the following table.

	Low mode	Normal mode	High mode
Under 7 mph (12 km/h)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Under 19 mph (30 km/h)	No	Yes	Yes
19 mph (30 km/h) or over	No	Yes	No

Height control indicator lights

If you change the vehicle height mode, the indicator lights change as follows:

- The current mode indicator light will turn off, and the selected mode indicator light will begin flashing.
- Once the change in vehicle height is complete, the selected mode indicator light will change from flashing to continuously lit.

■ Operating conditions

- The engine must be running.
- Vehicle speed must be within the acceptable range for the selected mode.

■ Automatic change in vehicle height

If the vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h) when in the high mode, or 7 mph (12 km/h) when in the low mode, normal mode is automatically selected.

■ Turning off the rear height control air suspension

- The system will remain off until the switch is pushed again, even if the engine switch is turned off.
- Even if the rear height control air suspension is turned off, the system automatically selects the normal mode if the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).

■ Automatic leveling function

The vehicle is adjusted to a fixed height for each mode, regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ If the vehicle height does not change

If the area around the rear suspension is coated with ice, or the undercarriage has come into contact with the road surface, the rear height control suspension will not operate. In this case, the indicator lights will change as follows:

- The current mode indicator light will turn off, and the target mode indicator light will begin flashing.
- The target mode indicator light will turn off, and the original mode indicator light will be lit once more. (The vehicle height does not change.)

If the rear height control air suspension cannot be operated even after removing the ice or progressing to a smooth driving surface, turn off and restart the engine.

■ Parking and stopping tips

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, or park the vehicle for a long time, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

■ When lowering the vehicle

Even if the engine is stopped while the vehicle height is being lowered, operation will continue for up to 25 seconds. If any of the side doors or the back door is opened within this 25 seconds, operation will continue for a further 15 seconds.

■ Rear height control failure warning

- If a malfunction occurs in the rear height control air suspension, normal mode is automatically selected. The height control "OFF" indicator will blink, and the vehicle height control cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected. Have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
- If the height control "OFF" indicator light does not come on when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position, there is a malfunction in the rear height control air suspension. You can continue normal driving, however have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

Failure to observe the following precautions may result in an accident.

■ Using the “HI” (high) mode

This mode should only be used for rough off-road conditions. Because the vehicle’s center of gravity is higher when in the high mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly.

■ When loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier

Do not select the “HI” (high) mode. Because the vehicle’s center of gravity is higher when in the high mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly and unexpected loss of control or vehicle rollover may occur.

■ When jacking up the vehicle or installing tire chains

Turn off the rear height control air suspension and stop the engine, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function.

■ When driving through water deeper than 28 in. (700 mm)

Select the “HI” (high) mode, turn off the rear height control air suspension and drive at 19 mph (30 km/h) or slower. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function.

■ If your vehicle must be towed

Put the vehicle height in the normal mode and turn off the rear height control air suspension, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function.

■ If your vehicle becomes stuck in a ditch

Turn off the rear height control air suspension, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function.

2-4. Using other driving systems

NOTICE

■ To avoid damage to the vehicle

- If in the low mode, the vehicle automatically shifts to the normal mode (vehicle height is raised) when the engine is started. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- After unloading, the vehicle height may be slightly higher than normal. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- Before lowering the vehicle height, check that no-one is under the vehicle and the area is free of obstructions. Also check that the underbody of the vehicle will not touch the ground.
- Do not select the low mode when driving on bumpy roads, as the underbody of the vehicle may contact the road surface.

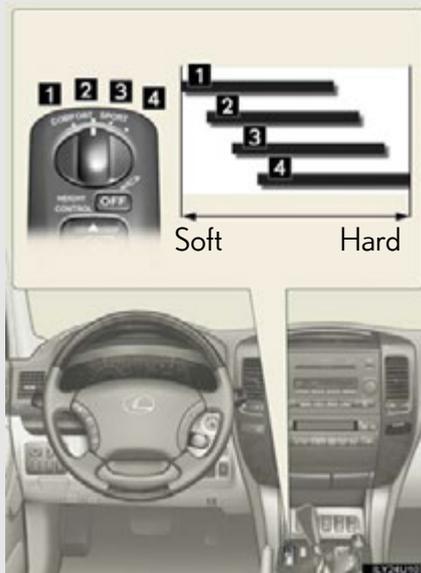
■ Avoid rapid changes to the vehicle height when the vehicle is heavily loaded

As the compressor may overheat, causing the vehicle height adjustment operation to stop.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Electronic modulated suspension

The electronic modulated suspension controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selected driving mode allows for good riding comfort and stability.



- 1 For driving on a bumpy road
- 2 For ordinary driving such as in the city traffic
- 3 For moderate high speed driving
- 4 For sporty type driving such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving

2

When driving

■ Driving mode

- Mode **1** is suitable for ordinary driving.
- Mode **3** or **4** is suitable for heavy load or driving on a unpaved road.
- With the four-wheel drive control lever at "L", the damping effect suitable for off-road driving will be provided.

2-4. Using other driving systems

DAC (Downhill Assist Control system)

The DAC helps to prevent excessive speed on steep downhill slopes. The system will operate when the vehicle is traveling under 15 mph (25 km/h) and the four-wheel drive control lever is in the "L" position.

■ System operation



Press the "DAC" switch. The indicator will come on, and the system will operate.

When the system is in operation, the slip indicator light will flash, and the stop lights/high mounted stop lights will be lit.

■ Turning off the system

Press the "DAC" switch while the system is in operation. The indicator will flash as the system gradually ceases operation, and will turn off when the system is fully off.

Press the "DAC" switch while the indicator is flashing to start the system again.

■ **Operating tips**

The system will operate when the shift lever is in a position other than "P", however to make effective use of the system it is recommended that the shift lever be shifted to "2" or "L".

■ **If the four-wheel drive control lever is in "H"**

The system will not operate.

■ **If the brake system overheats**

The system will cease operation and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

■ **System malfunction**

- The "DAC" indicator does not come on when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The "DAC" indicator does not come on when the "DAC" switch is pressed.

In the above cases have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

 **CAUTION**

■ **The system may not operate on the following surfaces, which may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.**

- Slippery surfaces such as wet or muddy roads
- Icy surfaces
- Unpaved roads

2-4. Using other driving systems

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.

■ Brake Assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

■ Active traction control

Maintains drive power and prevents the 4 wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope. It operates for approximately 5 seconds at maximum.

■ Limited Slip Differential

Transfers drive power to the rear tires when front tires spin, and vice versa, in order to improve traction.

■ Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System (if equipped)

Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System helps to significantly enhance handling response by reducing roll stiffness of the suspension stabilizer bars through means of a hydraulic control system.

When the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or if the rear wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

The slip indicator light flashes as well when ABS is operating.

2

When driving

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **Hill-start assist control is operational when**

- The shift lever is in any of the positions "D", "4", "3", "2" or "L".
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on the wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating on the wet or slick roads**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

■ **TRAC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC is operating.

Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ **The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively when**

- On steep inclines.
- On icy surfaces.

■ **When the VSC is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

 CAUTION

■ **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The ABS and VSC will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ **Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

2

When driving

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

 CAUTION

■ **Off-road vehicle precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

2-5. Driving information

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

■ Additional information for off-road driving

- ▶ For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:

To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

⚠ CAUTION**■ Off-road driving precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

2

When driving

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent the water damage**

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

2-5. Driving information

NOTICE

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

■ Roof luggage carrier



- 1 Cross rails
- 2 Roof rails

2

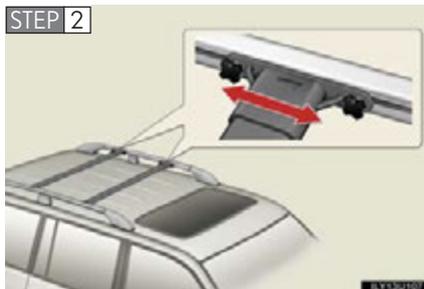
When driving

Adjusting the position of cross rails



Turn the knobs counterclockwise to loosen the cross rails.

2-5. Driving information



Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage.

After adjusting, be sure to tighten the cross rails by turning knobs clockwise.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

$$(\text{Cargo capacity}) = (\text{Total load capacity}) - (\text{Total weight of occupants})$$

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$ lbs.)

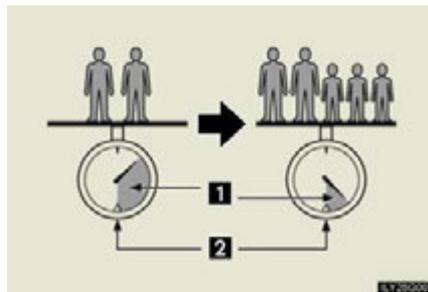
- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle.

That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 177)

2

Example on your vehicle



- 1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

When driving

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

- With third seats – total load capacity: 1200 lb. (544 kg)
1200 lb. - 366 lb. = 834 lb. (544 kg - 166 kg = 378 kg)
- Without third seats – total load capacity: 1000 lb. (454 kg)
1000 lb. - 366 lb. = 634 lb. (454 kg - 166 kg = 288 kg)

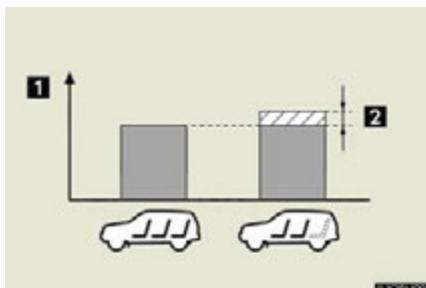
2-5. Driving information

From this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

- With third seats
 $834 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 446 \text{ lb.}$ ($378 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 202 \text{ kg}$)
- Without third seats
 $634 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 246 \text{ lb.}$ ($288 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 112 \text{ kg}$)

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

Seating configuration variation



1 Cargo capacity

2 Weight of removed third seat

If removing the third seat, it is possible to load extra cargo equal to the weight of the removed seats.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) - (Total weight of occupants) + (Weight of the removed third seats)

Third seat weight:

Right side – 30.2 lb. (13.7 kg)

Left side – 32.4 lb. (14.7 kg)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

- Do not place anything on the luggage cover, and do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not drive with objects on top of the instrument panel.
They may interfere with the driver's field of view or move during sharp acceleration or turning, thus impairing the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious bodily injury or death, in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

■ Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ Cross rail adjustment

Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by applying pressure forward and rearward.

Failure to do so may cause an accident, death or serious injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

2-5. Driving information

CAUTION

■ When loading cargo

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 424)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened to the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will raise the vehicle's center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise unexpected loss of control or vehicle rollover may occur.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle occasionally during the trip to make sure the cargo remains securely fastened.
- Do not exceed 130 lb. (58 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

NOTICE

■ When loading the luggage

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

■ Cross rail stoppers

To prevent damage the moon roof, do not remove the cross rail stoppers.

2-5. Driving information

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity:**

With third seats – 1200 lb. (544 kg)

Without third seats – 1000 lb. (454 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity:**

With third seats – Total 8 (Front 2, Rear 6)

Without third seats – Total 5 (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

■ **Towing capacity: 6500 lb. (2948 kg)**

Towing capacity means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

2-5. Driving information

■ Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 352)

CAUTION

■ Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

2-5. Driving information

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

2-5. Driving information

■ When driving the vehicle

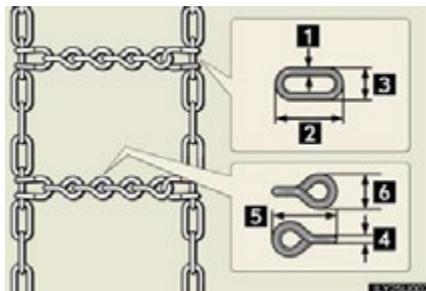
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

■ When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze, preventing it from being released.

Selecting snow chains

Use the correct snow chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire sizes.



Side chain:

- 1 0.20 in. (5.0 mm)
- 2 1.81 in. (46.0 mm)
- 3 0.71 in. (18.0 mm)

Cross chain:

- 4 0.25 in. (6.3 mm)
- 5 1.5 in. (38.1 mm)
- 6 0.89 in. (22.6 mm)

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the rear tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

■ Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains in accordance with the accompanying instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the specified level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

■ Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

2-5. Driving information

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealer. This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **When jacking up or installing tire chains**

Be sure to turn off the rear height control air suspension and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change because of the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

2-5. Driving information

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions. The vehicle stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake setting and performance, and the hitch.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kits, etc.

2

When driving

Weight limits

Confirm that the gross trailer weight, gross combined weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

- The gross trailer weight must never exceed 6500 lb. (2948 kg).
- The gross combined weight must never exceed 12000 lb. (5443 kg).



- The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- The gross axle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR indicated on the Certification Label.

2-5. Driving information

Towing related term

Towing related term	Meaning
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross vehicle weight. The gross vehicle weight is the total weight of the vehicle. When towing a trailer, it is the sum of the vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the tongue load.
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross axle weight. The gross axle weight is the load placed on each axle (front and rear).
GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross combination weight. The gross combination weight is the sum of the total vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the weight of the trailer being towed (including the cargo in the trailer).
Gross trailer weight	The sum of the trailer weight and the weight of the cargo in the trailer.
Towing capacity	The maximum allowable gross trailer weight. Towing capacity is calculated considering the base vehicle with necessary vehicle equipment and occupants. Additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle will reduce the towing capacity, gross trailer weight includes the trailer, cargo and necessary equipment for towing.
Tongue load	The load placed on the trailer hitch ball.

Trailer tongue load

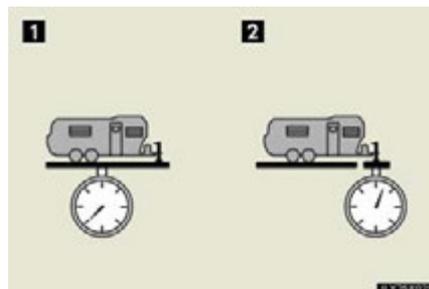
- A recommended tongue load varies in accordance with the types of trailers or towing as described below.
- In order to ensure the recommended values shown below, the trailer must be loaded by referring to the following instructions. The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11%.
(Tongue load / Gross trailer weight × 100 = 9 to 11%)

If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lbs. (900 kg), it is necessary to use a sway control device with sufficient capacity.

If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lbs. (2268 kg), it is necessary to use a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity.

If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, keep your vehicle level with the ground.

The gross trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.



- 1 Gross trailer weight
- 2 Tongue load

2-5. Driving information

Hitch and tow hitch receiver

■ Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be rated for towing a higher weight, the operator must never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch.

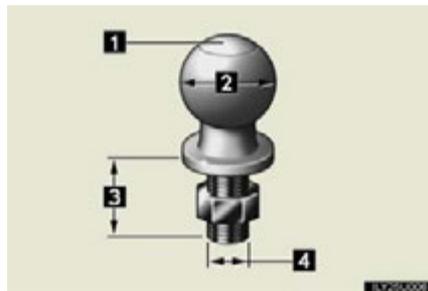
■ Tow hitch receiver



A tow hitch receiver installed under the rear bumper is rated for weight that does not exceed the vehicle's total towing weight.

Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



- 1** Trailer ball load rating
Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.
- 2** Ball diameter
Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.
- 3** Shank length
Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut at least 2 threads.
- 4** Shank diameter
Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

2

When driving

2-5. Driving information

Connecting trailer lights

Use the wire harness stored in the rear end underbody.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. The 3 main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep the following in mind when towing.

- Before starting out, check the trailer lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making turns.

- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.
- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- In order to maintain engine braking efficiency when driving on a long steep downgrade, do not use overdrive. Transmission shift range position must be in 4.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C] when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 419)
- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in "P". Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

2-5. Driving information

- STEP 1** Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
- STEP 2** Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
- STEP 3** When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
- STEP 4** Apply the parking brake firmly.
- STEP 5** Shift into "P" and turn off the engine.
- When restarting after parking on a slope:
 - STEP 1** With the transmission in the "P" position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.
 - STEP 2** Shift into "3", "2", "L", or "R" position (if reversing).
 - STEP 3** Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.
 - STEP 4** Have someone retrieve the blocks.

■ **When connecting and disconnecting a trailer**

▶ **Connecting**

- STEP 1** Set the rear height control air suspension to "LO" mode.
- STEP 2** Turn off the engine switch or the rear height control air suspension.
- STEP 3** Connect the trailer.
- STEP 4** Turn on the switch that was turned off on STEP 2.
- STEP 5** Set the rear height control air suspension to "N" mode.

▶ **Disconnecting**

- STEP 1** Set the rear height control air suspension to "LO" mode.
- STEP 2** Turn off the engine switch or the rear height control air suspension.
- STEP 3** Set the supporting leg of the trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm).
- STEP 4** Turn on the switch that was turned off on STEP 2.
- STEP 5** Wait until vehicle height is stabilized.
- STEP 6** Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If the hitch does not disconnect, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 5.
- STEP 7** Move the vehicle forward in the "LO" mode where the hitch does not touch anything in the "N" mode.
- STEP 8** Set the rear height control air suspension in the "N" mode.

2-5. Driving information

■ Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P. 432)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue load, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

■ Break-in schedule

If your vehicle is new or equipped with any new power train components (such as an engine, transmission, differential and wheel bearing), Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer until it has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km). However, avoid full throttle acceleration.

■ Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Trailer towing precautions**

- Follow all the instructions described in this section. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
- Exceeding the towing capacity, GVWR, GCWR and GAWR can cause an accident resulting in death or serious personal injuries.

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.
- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.
- Set the vehicle height to the "LO" mode and turn off the rear height control air suspension to prevent the vehicle height from automatically changing.
- The tow hitch receiver installed on your vehicle must never be used on another vehicle.
- Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. A instability (swaying) of the towing vehicle-trailer combination increases as speed increases, exceeding 45 mph (72 km/h) may cause loss of control.
- Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently.
This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

2-5. Driving information

CAUTION

■ Hitches

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

■ When towing a trailer

- If the gross trailer weight exceeds 1000 lb. (453 kg), trailer brakes are required. Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

 NOTICE**■ When installing a trailer hitch**

- Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

■ Safety chain

A safety chain must always be used between the towing vehicle and the trailer. Leave sufficient slack in the chain for turns. The chain should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent the tongue from dropping to the ground in the case that it becomes damaged or separated. For the correct safety chain installation procedure, ask your Lexus dealer.

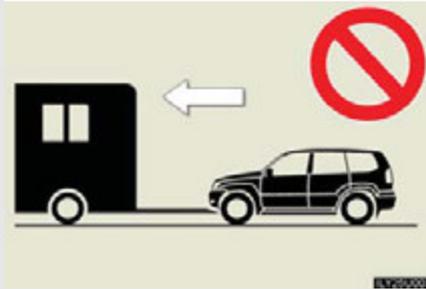
■ Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

2-5. Driving information

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



 NOTICE

- **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**
Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system	198
Rear cooler system.....	205
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers	206

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system type.....	208
Using the radio.....	210
Using the CD player	218
Playing MP3 and WMA discs.....	225
Optimal use of the audio system	231
Using the AUX adapter	234
Using the steering switches.....	235

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Rear seat entertainment system features.....	238
Using the DVD player (DVD video).....	243
Using the DVD player (video CD).....	250
Using the DVD player (audio CD/CD text)	252

Using the DVD player (MP3 discs)	253
Using the video mode.....	255
Changing the initial setting.....	256

3-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list	263
----------------------------	-----

3-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features.....	266
-------------------------------	-----

3-6. Other interior features

Sun visors	271
Vanity mirror	272
Clock.....	273
Outside temperature display.....	275
Ashtrays.....	276
Cigarette lighter	278
Power outlet	279
Seat heaters	281
Armrest	283
Floor mats	284
Luggage compartment features.....	285
Garage door opener	288
Compass	293
Lexus Link System	297

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

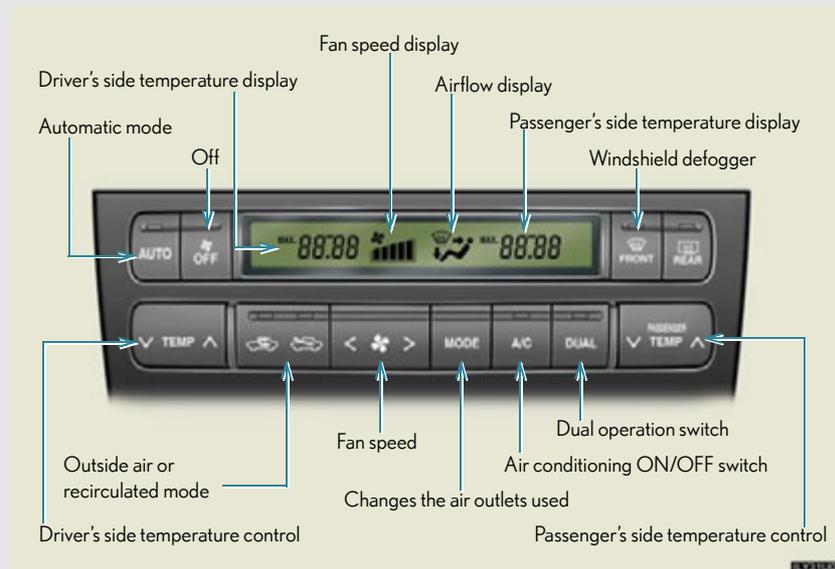
Automatic air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

► With navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

► Without navigation system



Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press .

The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press \wedge to increase the temperature and \vee to decrease the temperature on the .

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press \wedge to increase the temperature and \vee to decrease the temperature on the .

Press \wedge (increase) or \vee (decrease) on the  to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode). Press  to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time  is pressed.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press $<$ (decrease) or $>$ (increase) on the  button.

Press  to turn the fan off.

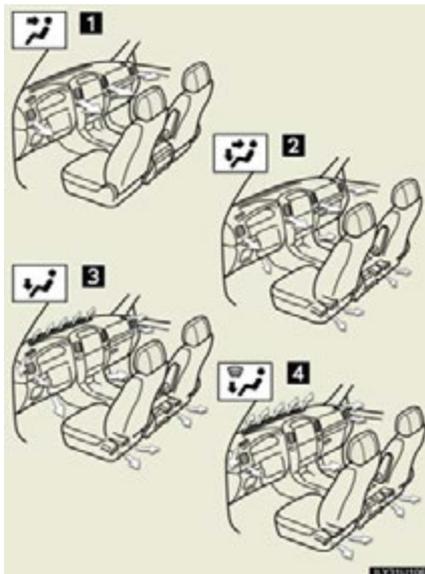
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Changing the air outlets



Press  .

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.



- 1 Air flows to the upper body.
- 2 Air flows to the upper body and feet.
- 3 Air flows to the feet.
- 4 Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

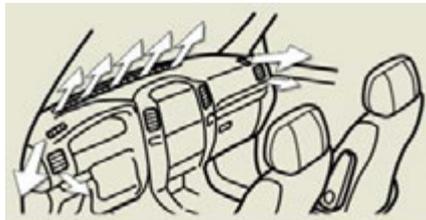
3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle) and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield



Press  .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

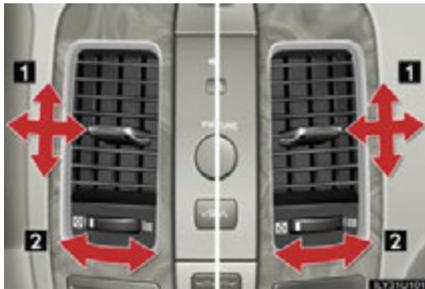
3

Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

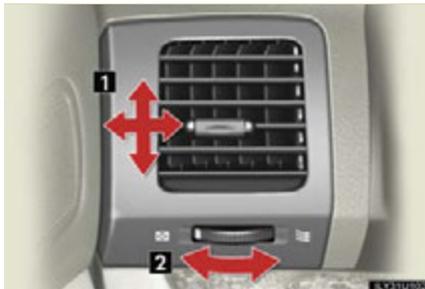
Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

► Center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

► Side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob right to open the vent and left to close the vent

■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ Outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C).

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is pressed.

■ When the indicator light on flashes

Press  and turn off the air conditioning system before turning it on once more. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

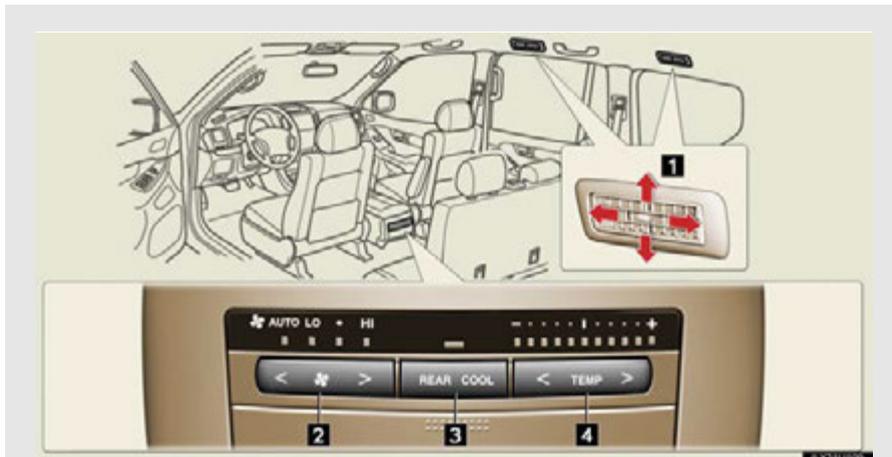
NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the automatic air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Rear cooler system



- 1 Rear cooler vents
- 2 Fan speed control button
Push either side to adjust the fan speed.
"AUTO" mode: Fan speed is automatically adjusted. Can only be set if the front air conditioning fan speed is set to "AUTO".
- 3 "REAR COOL" button
Turns the rear cooler on and off.
Does not operate if the front air conditioning is off.
- 4 "TEMP" (temperature control) button
Push either side to adjust the temperature.
The rear cooler temperature can be adjusted to within $\pm 10^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($\pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$) of the front air conditioning temperature.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the rear cooler on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove rain-drops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

■ Rear window defogger

▶ With navigation system



ON/OFF

▶ Without navigation system



ON/OFF

■ Outside rear view mirror defogger



ON/OFF

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch must be in the "ON" position.

■ Auto shut-off function

The system will automatically shut off after operating for 15 minutes.

CAUTION

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Turn the defoggers off when the engine is off.

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system type

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

CD player with changer and AM/FM radio.



If a Mark Levinson audio system is installed, the “Mark Levinson” logo is shown on the panel.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 210
Using the CD player	P. 218
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 225
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 231
Using the AUX adapter	P. 234
Using the steering switches	P. 235

■ **Using cellular phones**

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

 **CAUTION**

■ **For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada**

● **Part 15 of the FCC Rules**

FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

● **Laser products**

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself.

This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.

- This product utilizes a laser.

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

 **NOTICE**

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

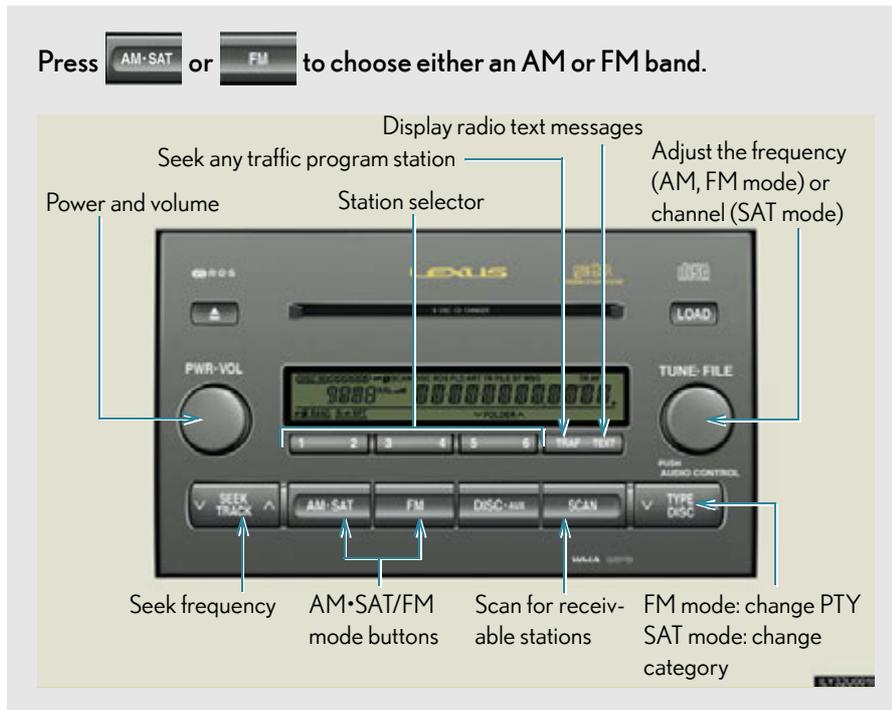
Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

■ **To avoid damaging the audio/video system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.

3-2. Using the audio system Using the radio

Press **AM•SAT** or **FM** to choose either an AM or FM band.



Setting station presets (excluding XM[®] Satellite Radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning the  dial or pressing  ^ or v on .

STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM[®] Satellite Radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Press .

“SCAN” appears on the display and all stations with reception will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

3-2. Using the audio system

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1 Press \wedge or \vee on the  button during FM reception.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- ROCK
- EASYLIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- ALERT (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

STEP 2 Press , or \wedge or \vee on .

The radio seeks or scans the station by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, "NOTHING" appears on the screen.

■ Displaying radio station names

Press .

■ Displaying radio text messages

Press .

If MSG shows in the display, a text message will be displayed.

If the text continues past the end of the display, > is displayed. Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

■ Traffic announcement

Press .

“TRAF SEEK” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “NO TRAF INFO” appears on the display.

XM[®] Satellite Radio (if equipped)

■ Receiving XM[®] Satellite Radio

STEP 1 Press  until “SAT” appears on the display.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn the  dial to select a desired channel from all the categories or press \wedge or \vee on  to select a desired channel in the current category.

3-2. Using the audio system

■ Presetting XM[®] Satellite Radio channels

Select the desired channel. Touch one of the preset stations (1 - 6) and hold it until you hear a beep.

■ Changing the channel category

Press \wedge or \vee on .

■ Scanning XM[®] Satellite Radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Press .

"SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.

● Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.

■ Displaying text information

Press .

The display will show up to 10 characters.

■ When the battery is disconnected

All preset stations are erased.

■ Reception sensitivity

- Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM[®] Satellite Radio.
- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the quarter window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the quarter window.

■ Receiving XM[®] Satellite Radio

The optional Lexus genuine satellite radio tuner and antenna allows you to receive and play XM[®] Satellite Radio broadcasts. (Subscription is required. Not available in Hawaii and Alaska.)*

- XM[®] subscriptions
For detailed information about XM[®] Satellite Radio or to subscribe, visit XM[®] on the web at www.xmradio.com or call 1-877-515-3987.
- Radio ID
You will need the radio ID when activating XM[®] service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the  dial, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM[®] Satellite Radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM[®] Satellite Radio are subject to change without notice.

3-2. Using the audio system

■ If the satellite radio does not operate normally

If a problem occurs with the XM[®] tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM [®] antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM [®] antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UPDATING	You have not subscribed to XM [®] Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM [®] Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact XM [®] Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM [®] signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.

The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM[®] Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987 during the following hours*.

Monday - Saturday: 6 a.m. - 2 a.m. Eastern Time

Sunday: 8 a.m. - 8 p.m. Eastern Time

*: Subject to change without notice.

■ Certifications for the radio tuner

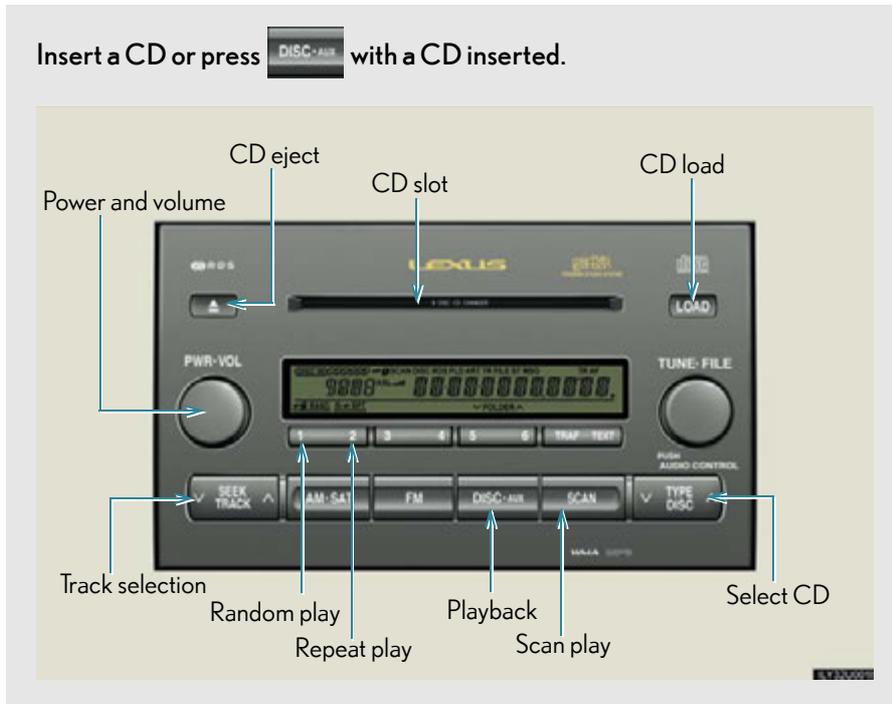
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

3-2. Using the audio system Using the CD player

Insert a CD or press **DISC-ALL** with a CD inserted.



Loading a CD

■ Loading a single CD

STEP 1 Press **LOAD**.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from "WAIT" to "LOAD".

■ Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a CD.

STEP 3 After inserting a CD, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next CD.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all CDs.

To cancel the operation, press the **LOAD** or **DISC+OFF** button. If you do not insert a CD within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Ejecting CDs

■ Ejecting a CD

STEP 1



To select the CD to be ejected, press **^** or **v** on **TYPE DISC**.

The number of the CD selected is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press **▲** and remove the CD.

■ Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold **▲** until you hear a beep, then remove the CDs.

3-2. Using the audio system

Selecting, fast forwarding, rewinding, and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

Press \wedge to move up and \vee to move down using  until the desired track number is displayed.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold \wedge or \vee on .

■ Scanning a CD

STEP 1 Press .

“SCAN” appears on the display.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a CD

■ To select a CD to play

To select the desired CD, press \wedge or \vee on .

■ To scan loaded CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired CD is reached.

Random play

■ Current CD

Press  (RAND).

Songs are played in random order until random play is canceled.

■ All CDs

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in random order until the button is pressed once again.

Repeating a track or a disc

■ Repeating a track

Press  (RPT).

■ Repeating a disc

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press  (RAND, RPT), or  again.

■ Displaying the title and artist name

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 12 letters can be displayed.

■ When "ERROR" or "WAIT" is shown on the display.

"ERROR": This indicates trouble either with the CD or within the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted upside down.

"WAIT": Operation is stopped due to high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press . Contact your Lexus dealer if the CD still cannot be played.

3-2. Using the audio system

■ CD compatibility



Only audio CDs with the marks shown to the left can be used.

The following products may not be playable on your CD player.

- SACDs
- dts-CDs
- Copy-protected CDs

■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

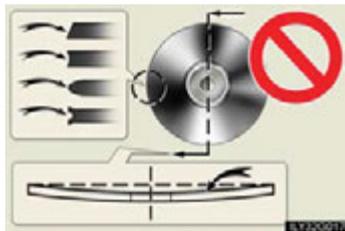
 NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the player and render the disc insert/eject function unusable.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality and deformed discs.



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have the label peeled off.

3-2. Using the audio system

NOTICE

■ Player precautions

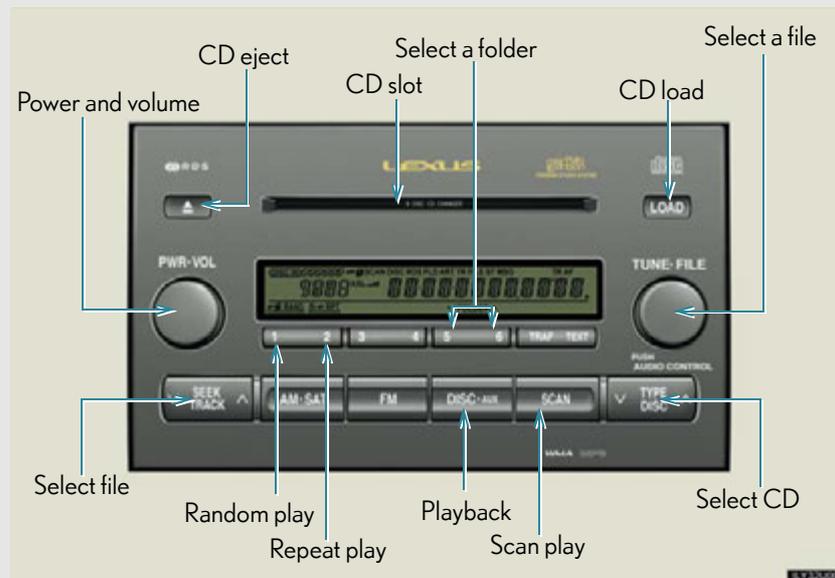
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.
- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.



3-2. Using the audio system Playing MP3 and WMA discs

Insert an MP3 or WMA disc or press **DISC-ABS** with a disc inserted.



3

Interior features

Loading, ejecting and selecting MP3 and WMA discs

Refer to the section titled “Using the CD player” for details. (→P. 218)

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting a folder

Press **1** (∧ or ∨) to select the previous/next folder.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Press and hold **SCAN** until you hear a beep.

3-2. Using the audio system

Selecting and scanning files

■ Selecting one file at a time

Turn the  dial or press ^ or v on  to select the desired file.

■ Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Press .

When the desired file is reached, press the switch once again.

File repeat

Press  (RPT).

Folder repeat

Press and hold  (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Random play

■ To play files from a particular folder in random order

Press  (RAND).

■ To play all the files on a disc in random order

Press and hold  (RAND) until you hear a beep.

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan play

Press  (RAND, RPT), or  again.

■ Error messages

→P. 221

■ CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

■ If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media TMAudio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards and to the media/formats recorded by them that can be used.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
- MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
*: Compatible with VBR
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

3-2. Using the audio system

- WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
*: Only compatible with 2-channel playback

- Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible, depending on the status of the CD-R or CD-RW. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 level 1, level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Multi-sessions

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

3-2. Using the audio system

■ CD-R and CD-RW discs

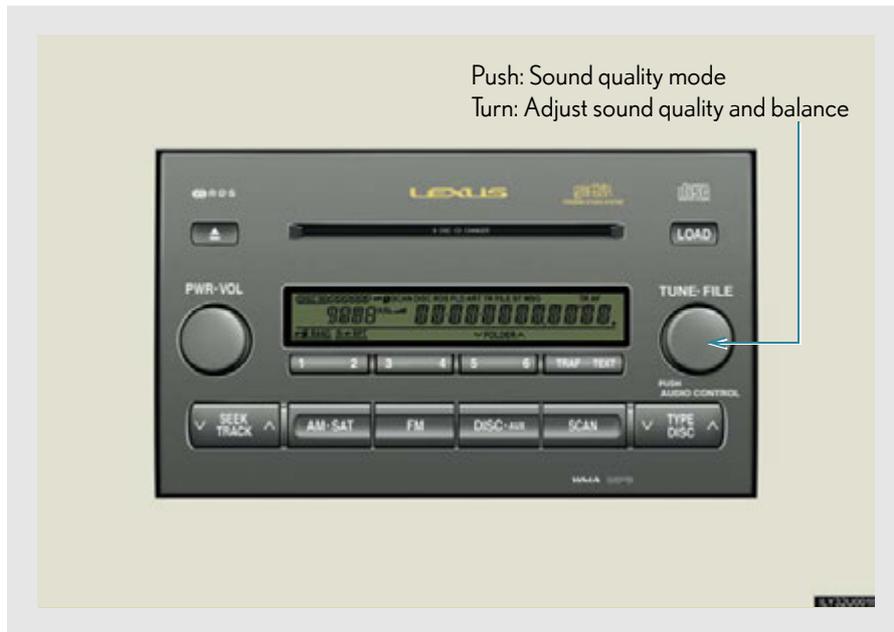
- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCD (Double Density CD) system.

■ Unsuitable discs, and player precautions

→P. 223

3-2. Using the audio system

Optimal use of the audio system



Adjusting sound quality, volume, balance and sound level

■ Changing sound quality modes

Push  to change the sound mode in the following order.

BAS → MID → TRE → FAD → BAL → ASL → POS*

*: For a Mark Levinson brand audio system is not available.

3-2. Using the audio system

■ Adjusting sound quality

Turn the  dial to the left or right.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Turn to the left	Turn to the right
Bass	BAS	-5 to 5	Low	High
Midrange	MID	-5 to 5		
Treble	TRE	-5 to 5		
Forward-rear balance	FAD	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left-right balance	BAL	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right
Surround*	SUR-ROUND	ON/OFF	OFF	ON

*: Mark Levinson brand audio system only.

■ Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

Turn  while the ASL mode is displayed to turn on or off the automatic sound levelizer.

Changing the listening position (For a Mark Levinson brand audio system is not available)

The speaker balance can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Turn the  dial while "POS" is shown on the display.

The listening position changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

Display	Listening position
DRIVER	Position best suited to the driver's seat
FRONT	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger's seat
REAR	Position best suited to the rear seats
ALL	Position best suited to all seats

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the AUX adapter

This adapter can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it using the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2 Press .

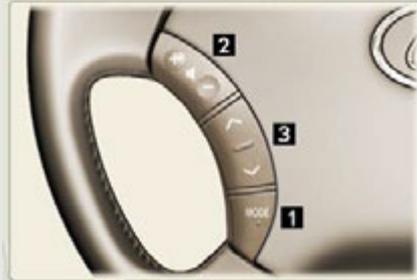
■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

3-2. Using the audio system

Using the steering switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the steering switches.



- 1 Power on, select audio source
- 2 Volume
- 3 Radio: Select radio stations
CD: Select tracks, files and discs



3

Interior features

Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is off.

The audio system can be turned OFF by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is on. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If a CD is not inserted, that mode will be skipped.

FM (1, 2) → CD player → AUX → AM → SAT (1, 2, 3)

3-2. Using the audio system

Adjusting the volume

Press "+" on  to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press  to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press ^ or v on  to select a radio station.

To seek for receivable stations, press and hold the switch until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file

STEP 1 Press  to select the CD player.

STEP 2 Press ^ or v on  to select the desired track.

Selecting a disc

STEP 1 Press  to select the CD player.

STEP 2 Press and hold ^ or v on  until you hear a beep.

3-2. Using the audio system

CAUTION

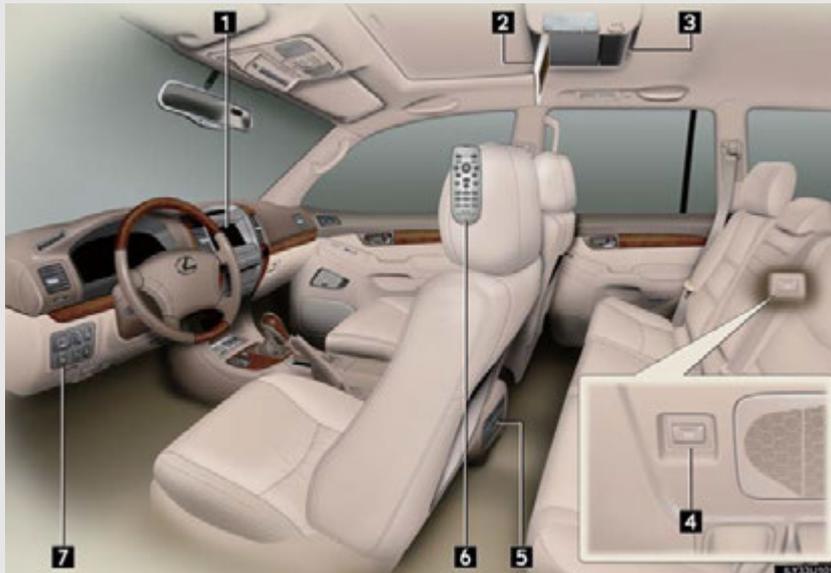
■ To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Rear seat entertainment system features*

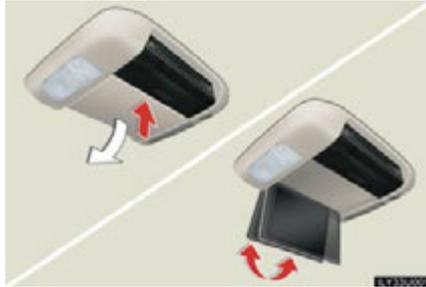
The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.



- 1 Front audio system
- 2 Display
- 3 DVD player
- 4 Power outlet
- 5 Headphone volume control dials, headphone jacks and A/V input adapter
- 6 Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 7 Power outlet main switch

*: If equipped

Opening and closing the display



Press the display to open.

Pull the display down to an easily viewable angle (between 90° and 125°).



To close the display, press the display up until a click is heard.

The screen is automatically turned off when the display is closed. However, the rear seat entertainment system is not turned off.

3

Interior features

Loading a disc



Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

The DISC indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and will repeat it after it reaches the end.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Ejecting a disc



Press  and remove the disc.

Headphone jacks



1 To use the headphones, connect them to the jack.

2 To adjust the volume

Turn the dial clockwise to increase the volume, and counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

■ **The rear seat entertainment system can be used when**

The engine switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



■ **When  appears on the screen**

This indicates that the selected operation is not currently available.

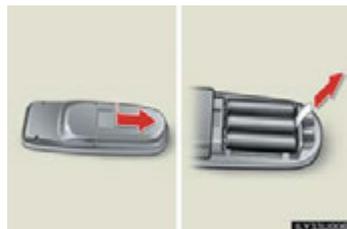
■ **Error messages**

DISC CHECK: Indicates that the disc is dirty, damaged or was inserted upside down. Clean the disc or insert it correctly.

REGION ERROR: Indicates that the DVD region code is incorrect.

DVD ERROR: Indicates that there is a problem inside the player. Eject the disc, then reinsert it. If this problem persists, see your Lexus dealer. If the malfunction still exists, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Before using the remote control (for new vehicle owners)**



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being discharged. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Headphones

Some headphones may not receive signals from the system clearly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

■ Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

CAUTION

■ While driving

Do not use headphones.
Doing so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the rear seat entertainment system is not used

Keep the display closed.
In the event of an accident or sudden braking, the opened display may hit an occupant's body, resulting in injury.

■ To prevent accidents and electric shock

Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

■ When the remote control is not used

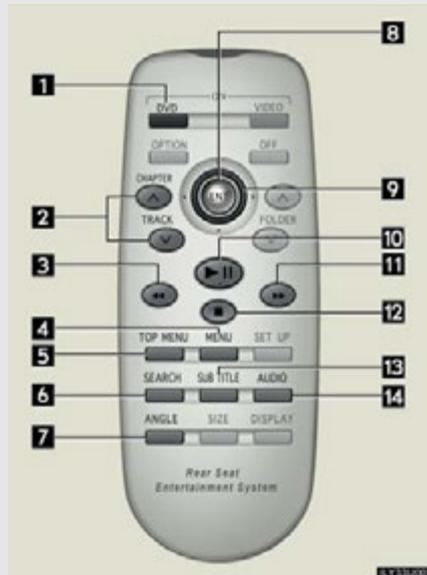
Stow the remote control to the remote control case.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

- Laser products (→ P. 209)

3-3. Using the rear audio system Using the DVD player (DVD video)

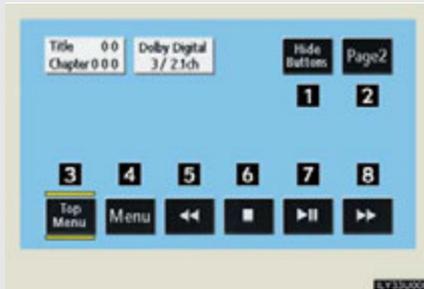
■ Remote control



- 1 Turn on the DVD mode
- 2 Search a chapter
- 3 Rewind
- 4 Turn on the menu screen
- 5 Turn on the title selection screen
- 6 Search the title
- 7 Change the screen angle
- 8 Enter the selected option
- 9 Select an option
- 10 Play/pause
- 11 Fast forward
- 12 Stop
- 13 Change the subtitle language
- 14 Change the audio language

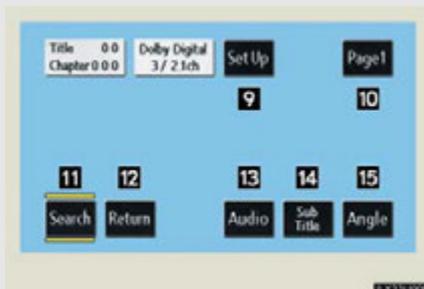
3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Display (Page 1)



- 1 Turn off the operation switches on the display
- 2 Display Page 2
- 3 Turn on or off the title selection screen for the disc
- 4 Turn on or off the menu screen for the disc
- 5 Rewind
- 6 Stop
- 7 Pause/cancel pause
- 8 Fast forward

■ Display (Page 2)



- 9 Display the initial setting screen
- 10 Display Page 1
- 11 Search for a title
- 12 Return to the previous screen
- 13 Change the audio language
- 14 Change the subtitle language
- 15 Change the angle

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning the display**

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.

If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

■ To prevent damage to the remote control

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperatures and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

■ DVD player

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

Turning the operation switches on and off

Press  to turn on the operation switches.

Press  once again or select  to turn off the operation switches.

Turning on the title selection screen

Press  or select  to turn on the title selection screen. For operation of the title selection screen, see the manual that comes with the DVD disc.

Turning on the menu screen

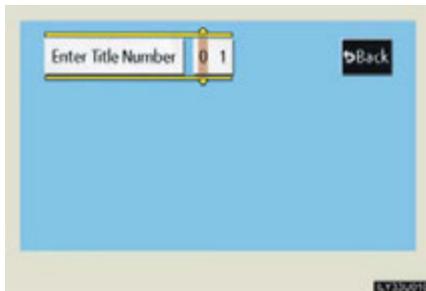
Press  or select  to turn on the menu screen. For operation of the title selection screen, see the manual that comes with the DVD disc.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Returning to the previous screen

Press **Return** to return to the previous screen. For operation of the title selection screen, see the manual that comes with the DVD disc.

Searching for a title

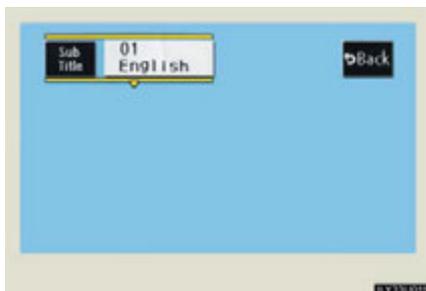


Press **SEARCH** or select **Search** to display the title search screen.

Select the title number, and press "ENT" to input it.

Select **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Changing the subtitle language

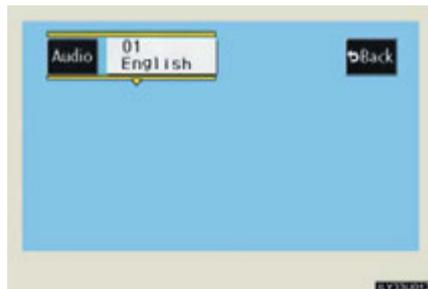


Press **SUB TITLE** or select **Sub Title** to display the subtitle language screen.

Each time **SUB TITLE** is pressed or **Sub Title** is selected, another language stored on the disc is selected.

Select **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Changing the audio language



Press **AUDIO** or select **Audio** to display the audio language screen.

Each time **AUDIO** is pressed or **Audio** is selected, another language stored on the disc is selected.

Select **Back** to return to the previous screen.

Changing the angle



Press **ANGLE** or select **Angle** to display the screen to change the angle.

Each time **ANGLE** is pressed or **Angle** is selected, the angle changes.

Select **Back** to return to the previous screen.

■ DVD player and DVD video discs

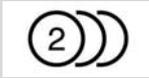
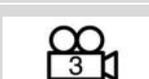
This DVD player is compatible with NTSC color TV formats. DVD video discs conforming to other formats such as PAL or SECAM cannot be used.

■ Region codes

Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating where you can use them. If the DVD video disc is not labeled ALL or I, you cannot use it in this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc in this player, REGION CODE ERROR appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, in some cases you cannot use it.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

	Indicates NTSC format.
	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
	Indicates the number of angles.
	Indicates the screen display ratios available. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code. All: all countries Number: region code

■ DVD video disc glossary

- DVD video discs: Digital Versatile Discs that hold the world's standard video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoding technology has been adopted in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- **Viewer restrictions:** This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.
 - Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.
 - Level 2 - 7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.
 - Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- **Multi-angle feature:** Allows you to enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- **Multi-language feature:** Allows you to select the language of the subtitles and audio.
- **Region codes:** Region codes are found on DVD players and DVD discs. If a DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on that DVD player.
- **Audio:** This DVD player can play liner PCM, Dolby digital, dts and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded type cannot be played.
- **Title and chapter:** Video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs are divided into sections by title and chapter.
- **Title:** The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.
- **Chapter:** A unit smaller than a title. A title comprises multiple chapters.

■ Audio

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and **DD** are trademarks of Dolby[®] Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works. 1992-1997 Dolby[®] Laboratories. All rights reserved.

"dts" is a trademark of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

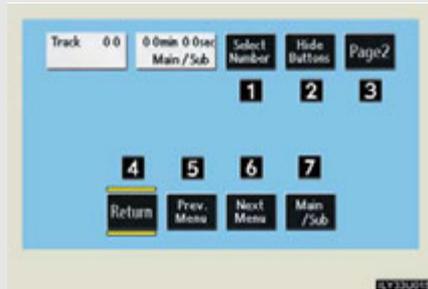
Using the DVD player (video CD)

■ Remote control



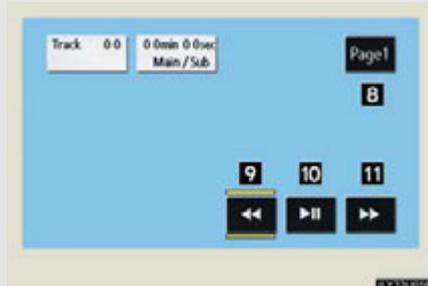
- 1 Select a switch
- 2 Select a chapter
- 3 Play/pause
- 4 Rewind
- 5 Display operation switches
- 6 Enter the selected option
- 7 Fast forward
- 8 Stop
- 9 Change the initial setting

■ Display (page 1)



- 1 Select a disc menu number
- 2 Turn off the menu screen
- 3 Display page 2
- 4 Turn on the disc menu
- 5 Return to the previous page screen (with the disc menu displayed)
- 6 Proceed to the next page screen (with the disc menu displayed)
- 7 Change to a multiplex transmission

■ Display (page 2)



- 8 Display page 1
- 9 Rewind
- 10 Play/pause
- 11 Fast forward

Selecting a disc menu number

Select **Select Number** to display the disc menu number search screen.

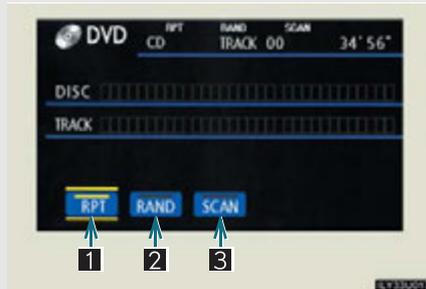
Select the disc menu number, and press “ENT” to input it.

Select **Back** to return to the previous screen.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Using the DVD player (audio CD/CD text)

■ Control screen



Press  to display the control screen.

- 1 Repeat play
- 2 Random play
- 3 Scan play

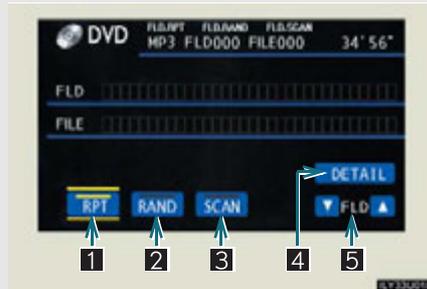
■ Canceling random, repeat and scan play

Select ,  or  again.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Using the DVD player (MP3 discs)

■ Control screen



Press  to display the control screen.

- 1 Repeat play
- 2 Random play
- 3 Scan play
- 4 Display file information
- 5 Select a folder

Repeat play

■ Repeat a file

Select .

■ Repeat all of files in a folder

Select , and press and hold "ENT" on the remote control.

Random play

■ Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Select .

■ Playing all of the files on a disc in random order

Select , and press and hold "ENT" on the remote control.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Scan play

- **Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder**

Select **SCAN**.

The player will scan all the files in the folder. Each file will be played for 10 seconds.

- **Selecting the desired file by cueing the folders on the disc**

Select **SCAN**, and press and hold "ENT" remote control.

The player will scan all the folders on the disc. The first file in each folder will be played for 10 seconds.

- **Canceling random, repeat and scan play**

Select **RPT**, **RAND** or **SCAN** again.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Using the video mode



Press  to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio machine to the input terminal adapter.

Using the adapter



Open the cover.

The A/V input adapter is composed of 3 input adapters.

Yellow: Image input adapter

White: Audio input adapter

Red: Audio input adapter

3

Interior features

■ A/V input adapter

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

■ Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect the audio device. (→P. 279)

NOTICE

■ When the A/V input adapter is not in use

Keep the A/V input adapter cover closed.
Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or short circuit.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Changing the initial setting



Press **SET UP** or select **Set Up** to display the initial settings screen.

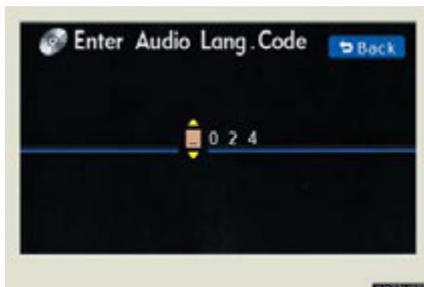
The following settings can be changed here.

- Audio language
- Subtitle language
- DVD language
- Angle mark
- Parental lock

Changing the audio language



Select "Audio Language".
Select the language you want to hear, and press "ENT" to input it.



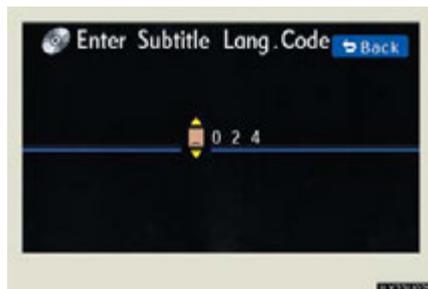
Select "Others" if you cannot find the language you want to hear.
Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press "ENT" to input it.

Language code list (→P. 260)
If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.

Changing the subtitle language



Select "Subtitle Language".
Select the desired language, and press "ENT" to input it.



Select "Others" if you cannot find the desired language.
Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press "ENT" to input it.

Language code list (→P. 260)
If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.

3

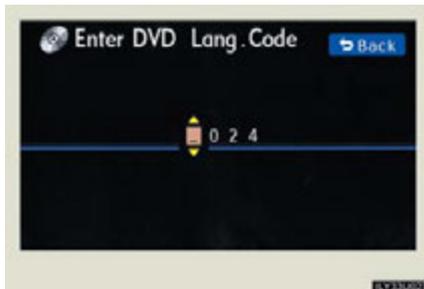
Interior features

Changing the DVD language



Select "DVD Language".
Select the desired language and press "ENT" to input it.

3-3. Using the rear audio system



Select "Others" if you cannot find the desired language. Enter the appropriate 4-digit language code. Select a number, and press "ENT" to input it.

Language code list (→P. 260)

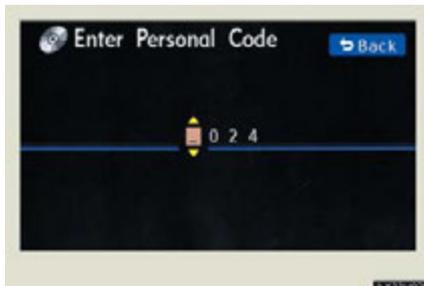
If a code that is not in the list is entered, Incorrect Code will appear on the screen.

Turning the angle mark on and off

The angle mark can be turned on for discs that are multi-angle compatible.

Each time you press "ENT" when "Angle Mark" is selected, the angle mark turns on or off alternately.

Setting viewer restriction levels



Setting a password allows use of the viewer restriction function.

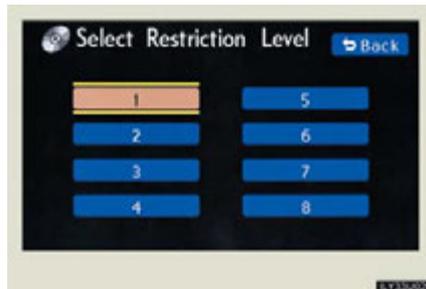
Select "Parental Lock".

Enter the password and press "ENT".

The setting cannot be changed unless the password is entered.

It is necessary to initialize the password if you forget it. (→P. 259)

3-3. Using the rear audio system



Select a restriction level (1-8), and press “ENT”. The smaller the level number, the stricter the age limit.

Setting the display mode



Pressing **SIZE** changes the display modes sequentially as follows:
Normal→Wide 1→Wide 2

3

Interior features

■ Returning to the previous screen

Select **Back**, and press “ENT”.

■ To initialize the password

Press “◀” on the remote control or unit ten times when the personal code input screen is displayed.

3-3. Using the rear audio system

■ Language code list

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1001	Japanese	0125	Aymara	0601	Persian
0514	English	0126	Azerbaijani	0609	Finnish
0618	French	0201	Bashkir	0610	Fiji
0405	German	0205	Byelorussian	0615	Faroese
0920	Italian	0207	Bulgarian	0625	Frisian
0519	Spanish	0208	Bihari	0701	Irish
2608	Chinese	0209	Bislama	0704	Scots-Gaelic
1412	Dutch	0214	Bengali	0712	Galician
1620	Portuguese	0215	Tibetan	0714	Guarani
1922	Swedish	0218	Breton	0721	Gujarati
1821	Russian	0301	Catalan	0801	Hausa
1115	Korean	0315	Corsican	0809	Hindi
0512	Greek	0319	Czech	0818	Croatian
0101	Afar	0325	Welsh	0821	Hungarian
0102	Abkhazian	0401	Danish	0825	Armenian
0106	Afrikaans	0426	Bhutani	0901	Interlingua
0113	Amharic	0515	Esperanto	0905	Interlingue
0118	Arabic	0520	Estonian	0911	Inupiak
0119	Assamese	0521	Basque	0914	Indonesian

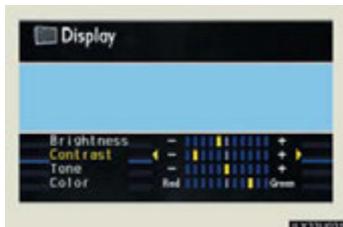
3-3. Using the rear audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0919	Icelandic	1307	Malagasy	1612	Polish
0923	Hebrew	1309	Maori	1619	Pashto, Pushto
1009	Yiddish	1311	Macedonian	1721	Quechua
1023	Javanese	1312	Malayalam	1813	Rhaeto- Romance
1101	Georgian	1314	Mongolian	1814	Kirundi
1111	Kazakh	1315	Moldavian	1815	Romanian
1112	Greenlandic	1318	Marathi	1823	Kinyarwanda
1113	Cambodian	1319	Malay	1901	Sanskrit
1114	Kannada	1320	Maltese	1904	Sindhi
1119	Kashmiri	1325	Burmese	1907	Sangho
1121	Kurdish	1401	Nauru	1908	Serbo- Croatian
1125	Kirghiz	1405	Nepali	1909	Sinhalese
1201	Latin	1415	Norwegian	1911	Slovak
1214	Lingala	1503	Occitan	1912	Slovenian
1215	Laothian	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1913	Samoaan
1220	Lithuanian	1518	Oriya	1914	Shona
1222	Latvian	1601	Panjabi	1915	Somali

3-3. Using the rear audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1917	Albanian	2009	Tigrinya	2118	Urdu
1918	Serbian	2011	Turkmen	2126	Uzbek
1919	Siswati	2012	Tagalog	2209	Vietnamese
1920	Sesotho	2014	Setswana	2215	Volapük
1921	Sundanese	2015	Tonga	2315	Wolof
1923	Swahili	2018	Turkish	2408	Xhosa
2001	Tamil	2019	Tsonga	2515	Yoruba
2005	Telugu	2020	Tatar	2621	Zulu
2007	Tajik	2023	Twi		
2008	Thai	2111	Ukrainian		

■ Adjusting the screen



Press  .

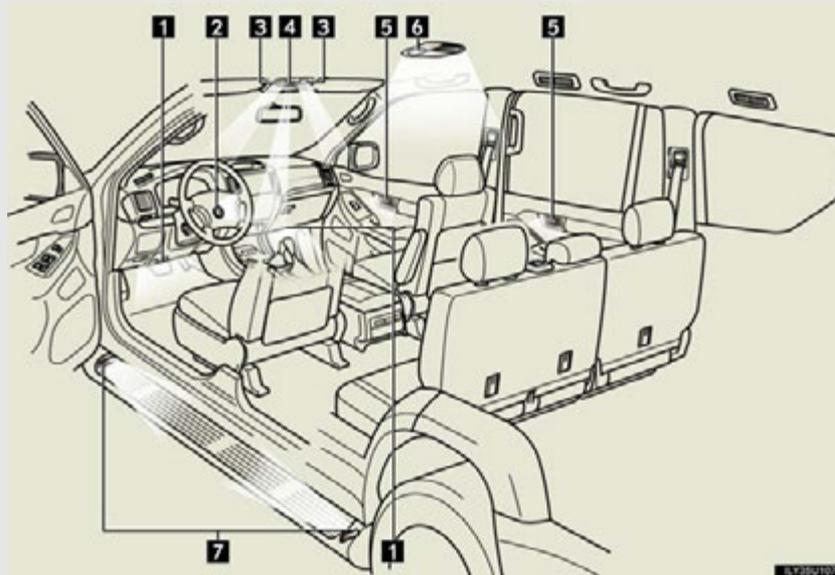
Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments. Press  or "ENT" to input it.

	"-" or Red	"+" or Green
Brightness	Darkens	Brightens
Contrast	Weakens the contrast	Strengthens the contrast
Tone	Weakens the tone	Strengthens the tone
Color	Strengthens the red color	Strengthens the green color

3-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list

Illuminated entry system: The various lights automatically turn on/off according to whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are open/closed, the engine switch position, and the vehicle's speed.



- 1 Foot light
- 2 Engine switch light
- 3 Personal light
- 4 Center console spot lights
- 5 Inside door handle lights
- 6 Center interior light
- 7 Running board lights

When the instrument panel light control dial is turned to minimum, the foot lights will turn off. (→P.130)

3-4. Using the interior lights

■ To prevent battery discharge

All of the lights will automatically turn off when the ignition key is removed and the door is left open for more than 30 minutes.

■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Setting (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 449)

Personal lights



- 1 "ON"
- 2 "OFF"
- 3 "DOOR"

The lights are turned on/off by the illuminated entry system.

Interior lights

► Center (without rear seat entertainment system)



- 1 "ON"
- 2 "OFF"
- 3 "DOOR"

The lights are turned on/off by the illuminated entry system.

► Center (with rear seat entertainment system)



- 1 "ON"
- 2 "OFF"
- 3 "DOOR"

The lights are turned on/off by the illuminated entry system.

► Rear



- 1 "ON"
- 2 "OFF"
- 3 "DOOR"

The light turns on when the back door is opened.

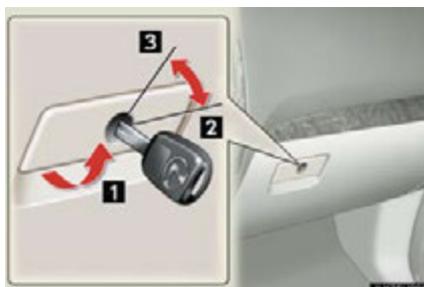
3-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features



- 1 Glove box
- 2 Overhead console
- 3 Cup holders
- 4 Door pocket
- 5 Console box

Glove box



- 1 Open
- 2 Lock with the key
- 3 Unlock with the key

■ **Glove box light**

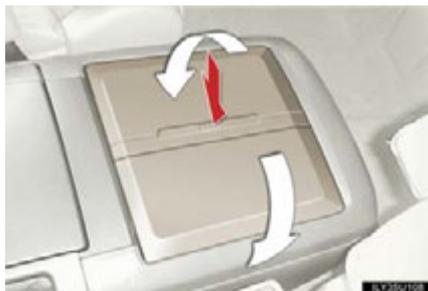
The light turns on when the headlight switch is on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console box



Push the center of the lid to open.

■ **Console box light**

The light turn on when the headlight switch is on.

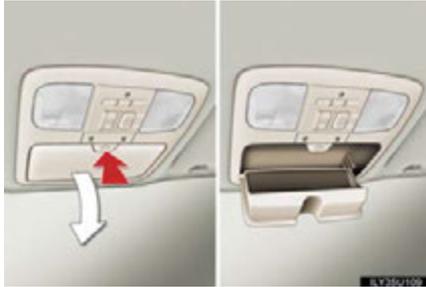
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

3-5. Using the storage features

Overhead console



The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Items that should not be left in the overhead console**

Do not leave glasses or lighters in the console. If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or become cracked.

■ **Caution while driving**

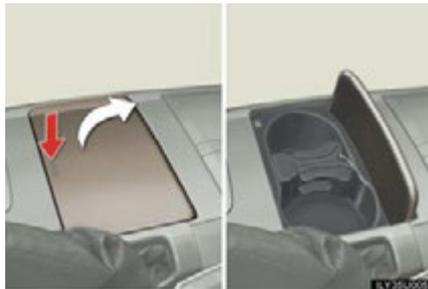
Do not leave the overhead console open. Items may fall out and cause injury.

■ **Maximum storage weight**

Do not store any object heavier than 0.44 lb. (200 g) in the overhead console, as this may cause the console to open unexpectedly, leading to injury.

Cup holders

- ▶ In front of the console box



To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.

- ▶ In the console box



To use, open the console box and pull down the cup holder.

- ▶ Second seat armrest



To open, press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.

3-5. Using the storage features

► Beside the third seat



⚠ CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed.

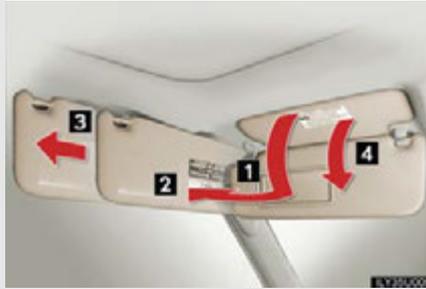
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Door pockets



3-6. Other interior features

Sun visors



- 1 Forward position: Flip down.
- 2 Side position: Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.
- 3 Side extender: Place in side position, then slide backwards.
- 4 The secondary sun visor may be used when the primary sun visor is in the side position.

3

Interior features

3-6. Other interior features

Vanity mirror



The light turns on when the cover is opened.

3-6. Other interior features

Clock



■ Adjust clock

STEP 1 Push and hold the “MODE” button until “ILL” appear on the display.

STEP 2 Push “MODE” button once. The time will blink.

STEP 3



1 Adjust hours.

2 Adjust minutes.

3 Round the nearest hour.

After setting, push “MODE” button.

3-6. Other interior features

- **The clock is displayed when**

- The engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

- **When the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

- The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

3-6. Other interior features

Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from -22°F (-30°C) up to 122°F (50°C).



■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

■ When -- is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ Display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

3-6. Other interior features

Ashtrays

► Front



Push the lid to open.

Hold the plate down and pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

► Rear



Raise the lid to open.

Hold the plate down and pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

 CAUTION

■ **When not in use**

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ **To prevent fire**

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

3-6. Other interior features

Cigarette lighter



1 Push the cover to open, and push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when ready for use.

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter pressed in. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

3-6. Other interior features

Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for a following component.

12V: Accessories that run on less than 10A.

115V AC: Accessories that use less than 100W.

▶ 12V



▶ 115V AC



1 To use the power outlet, push the switch.

The indicator light comes on.

2 Power outlet socket

3-6. Other interior features

■ The power outlet can be used when

12V: The engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

115V: The engine switch is in the "ON" position.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the power outlet

Close the power outlet lid when not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent the fuse from being blown

12V: Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12V/10A.

115V: Do not use a 115V AC appliance that requires more than 100W.

If a 115V AC appliance that consumes more than 100W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ Appliances that may not operate properly (115V AC)

The following 115V AC appliances may not operate even if their power consumption is under 100W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data.
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

3-6. Other interior features

Seat heaters



3

Interior features

- **The seat heaters can be used when**
The engine switch is in the "ON" position.
- **When not in use**
Turn the dial until the indicator light turns off.

3-6. Other interior features

CAUTION

■ Burns

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
 - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
 - Persons with sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.

NOTICE

■ To prevent seat heater damage

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Turn the dials off when the engine is not running.

3-6. Other interior features

Armrest

▶ Front seat



Lower the armrest.

Raise it to the desired angle.

▶ Second seat



Pull the armrest down for use.

3

Interior features

⚠ NOTICE

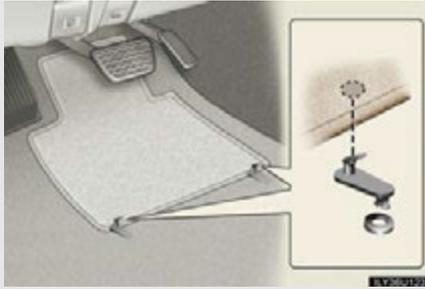
■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

3-6. Other interior features

Floor mats

Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.



Secure the floor mat using the hooks provided.

CAUTION

■ When inserting the floor mat

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in the floor mat slipping and interfering with the movement of the pedals during driving, resulting in an accident.

- Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet and the correct side faces upward.
- Do not place floor mats on top of existing mats.

3-6. Other interior features

Luggage compartment features

■ Quarter window



To open the quarter windows, pull the latch handle toward you and swing the window fully out.

■ Cargo hooks



Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

■ Cargo net hooks

To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and cargo hooks.

The cargo net itself is not included as an original equipment.

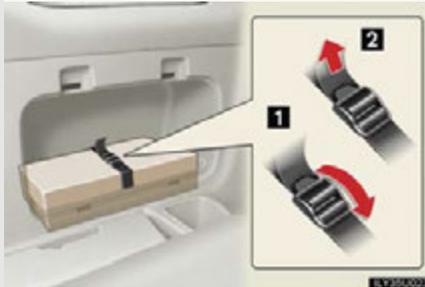
■ Storage compartment



Open the storage compartment as shown.

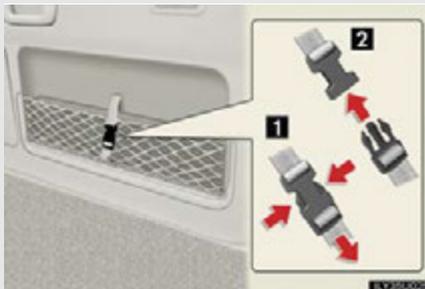
3-6. Other interior features

► First-aid kit storage belt



- 1 Loosen
- 2 Tighten

■ Warning reflector holder



- 1 Disengage
- 2 Engage

■ Luggage cover



Pull out the luggage cover and hook it on the anchors.

Removing luggage cover



Retract the cover and release both ends, then lift it out.

After removing the luggage cover, place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment.

■ **When installing the luggage cover**

Keep the "TOP" mark on the luggage cover ends upward.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the cargo hooks are not in use**

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent cargo hooks damage**

Do not use the third seat anchors instead of the cargo hooks.

3-6. Other interior features

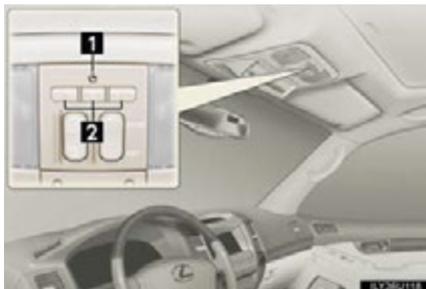
Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink[®] Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink[®].

Programming the HomeLink[®] (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Buttons

■ Programming the HomeLink[®]



Point the remote control for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink[®] control buttons.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] in view while programming.



Press and hold down one of the buttons on the HomeLink[®] and the button on the transmitter. When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.



Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button.

If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the Rolling Code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink[®] button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink[®]) flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the Rolling Code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

3-6. Other interior features

■ Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading “Programming the HomeLink[®]” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

STEP 2 Press the training button.

STEP 3 Press and release the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink[®] button twice. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink[®] transceiver and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink[®].

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink[®] button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device’s remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink[®] buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Basic programming” instructions.

Operating the HomeLink[®]

Press the appropriate HomeLink[®] button. The HomeLink[®] indicator light on the HomeLink[®] transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink[®] continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Erasing the entire HomeLink[®] memory (all three programs)



Press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink[®] memory.

3-6. Other interior features

■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

■ Certification for the garage door opener

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

CAUTION

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

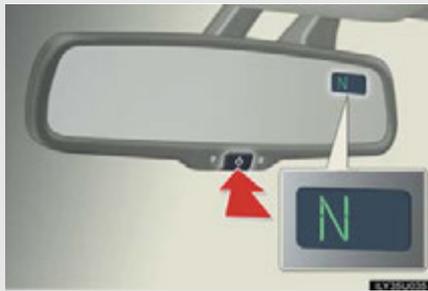
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

3-6. Other interior features

Compass

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

■ Operation



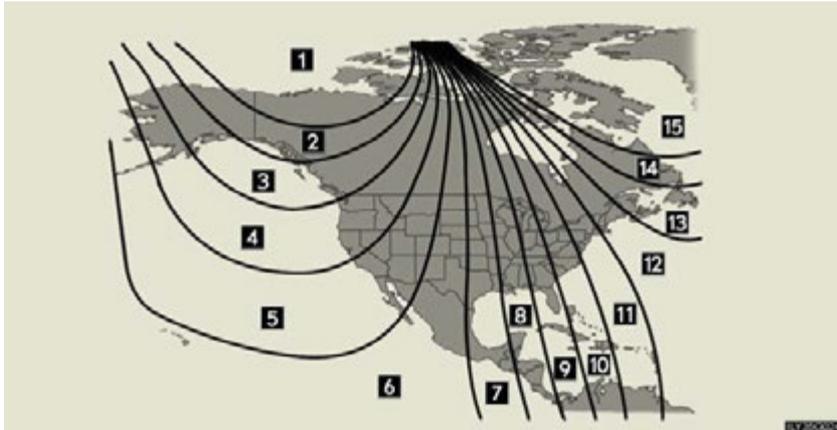
Press the button to turn the compass on/off.

■ Displays and directions

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

3-6. Other interior features

Calibrating the compass



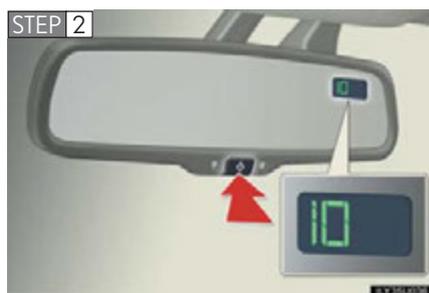
The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.

To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

■ Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.

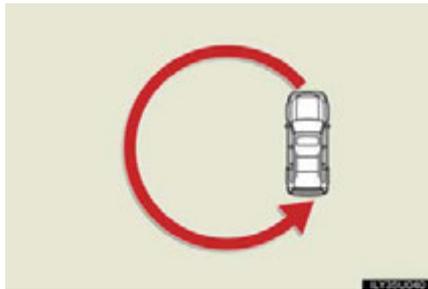


Press the button until a number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

STEP 3 Press the button, and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

- STEP 4** Wait a few seconds until the compass direction is displayed.
The calibration is complete.

■ Circling calibration



If “C” appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth’s magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
(There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

3-6. Other interior features

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the display.
Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ When doing the circling calibration

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

NOTICE

■ To avoid the compass malfunctions

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror.
Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

■ To ensure normal operation of the compass

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

3-6. Other interior features

Lexus Link System*

The Lexus Link System is a communication service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and cellular service to provide you with safety, security and convenience. This system is only operational in GPS and cellular coverage areas. Button operation and voice commands are used to operate the system. To operate the system, follow the voice guidance instructions. For details about service and subscription, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free).

■ Buttons



- 1 Voice keypad button
- 2 Volume control
- 3 Phone button
- 4 "SERVICES" button
- 5 Emergency button

*: If equipped

3-6. Other interior features

■ Services

The Lexus Link System offers the following services.

- Airbag deployment notification (→P. 300)
- Emergency assistance (→P. 300)
- Stolen vehicle location assistance (→P. 301)
- Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock (→P. 301)
- Advisor record (→P. 302)
- Personal calling (→P. 302)
- Other services (→P. 301)

Operating the Lexus Link System during a Bluetooth® phone call will terminate the Bluetooth® phone call.

Safety information for the Lexus Link System

Important! Read this information before using the Lexus Link System.

■ Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Lexus Link System installed in your vehicle is a low power ratio transmitter and receiver. When the engine switch is in the "ON" position, it receives and also sends radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of the Lexus Link System complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

3-6. Other interior features

Indicator and warning lights



1 Operation indicator light

If your subscription has expired, the operation indicator light will go off.

2 Warning light

If the warning light (red light) comes on, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag deployment notification

If an airbag deploys, an emergency call is automatically placed to the Lexus Link Call Center, and your vehicle's location is identified. The Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to contact you and assess the situation. The Advisor can quickly contact the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to your location.

The Lexus Link Advisor can, if requested, connect you to an emergency services operator.

Emergency assistance

When you press the  button, a priority call is placed to the Lexus Link Call Center with your vehicle's location. At the Call Center, the Lexus Link Advisor can determine your vehicle's location, communicate with you, and, if appropriate, contact the nearest emergency service provider.

If you have accidentally pressed the button, tell the Lexus Link Advisor that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Stolen vehicle location assistance

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To protect subscribers' privacy, the location of a vehicle will not be provided to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock

The remote operations are performed by contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle. When necessary, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

- In the case that you forget to lock the vehicle or you are locked out, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to lock or unlock the vehicle remotely.
- In the case that you forget where you parked the vehicle, such as in a large parking lot, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to flash the headlights and sound the horn to help you locate the vehicle.

When contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle, you need the Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number). Write the PIN down and carry it with you.

Other services

Press the  button in the vehicle or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free), and then select the option for Lexus Link. The services provided will depend on the service plan level.

3-6. Other interior features

Advisor record

■ Recording a conversation with an advisor

Press the  button to record a conversation. To stop recording, press the  button again.

- Up to 2 minutes of recording time is available.
- Recording a new conversation deletes the previously recorded conversation.

■ Playing the recorded conversation

STEP 1 Press the  or  button.

STEP 2 Say "Advisor playback".

Press the button again to stop the playback.

To restart the playback, press the  button, say "Advisor playback" and then select either of the following methods.

- Say "Resume" to resume the playback.
- Say "Play" to start from the beginning.

Personal calling

The hands-free personal calling feature can be added to the Lexus Link System as an option. You can purchase a package of minutes that works best for you. As you make and receive calls, minutes are deducted from your plan. They are easily billed to a credit card that is kept on file so no separate phone bill is needed.

Personal calling universal voice recognition commands:

- **"Help"** The system will provide a list of available commands.
- **"Clear"** When you are entering digits, this command will erase the last digit entered.
- **"Cancel"** This command takes you from the current function to the "Lexus Link ready" prompt. If the last response from the system was "Lexus Link ready", this command will exit voice mode.

Voice recognition error message:

- **“Pardon”** The system responds with this message if the system does not recognize your voice command properly. Say the command slowly again. After the third time this happens, the system will try to guess the command you are requesting. If correct, say “Yes”. If not, say “No”, and the system will prompt you with its next-best guess.
- **“Slower please”** The system responds with this message if you say a command before the system is ready to listen or if your voice command cannot be recognized because of substantial background noise. Try to wait slightly longer before speaking.

■ There are 5 ways to make a call.

▶ Dialing a specific number

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Dial”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Phone number to dial please”, say the entire number you wish to dial without pausing.

STEP 3 The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

STEP 4 Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 5 The system responds with “Dialing” (your call will then be connected).

▶ Dialing digit-by-digit (“Digit Dial”)

“Digit Dial” enables you to dial a phone number by individual digit. This is helpful when there is background noise and also improves voice recognition.

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Digit dial”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Digit please”, say the first digit of the number to be dialed and wait for it to be repeated back to you.

STEP 3 Continue one digit at a time until all digits are entered.

3-6. Other interior features

STEP 4 When finished, say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dialing” and your call is placed.

If you have problems storing a number using the continuous number method, you can store numbers one digit at a time using “Digit Store”. Simply follow the instructions above for “Digit Dial”, except say “Digit Store” in STEP 1 and “Store” in STEP 4.

► Dialing a phone number saved as a nametag

A nametag is a convenient way to store important or frequently called phone numbers for easy access at any time. To do this, choose a frequently-called number to store, the example below uses your home telephone number.

● How to store a nametag

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Store”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Phone number to store, please”, say the entire number you wish to store with no pauses. The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

STEP 3 Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 4 When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say “home”.

STEP 5 When the system responds with “About to store home. Does that sound OK?”, say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 6 The system responds with “Storing home”.

- The system can store up to 20 nametags.

- Try to use multi-syllable nametags such as “my home”, and “the office”.

- Try to avoid similar-sounding nametags like “Tim” and “Kim”.

When using the “Dial” and “Store” commands, the system will recognize 7, 10, and 11-digit phone numbers. When dialing or storing a phone number, you can say “zero” or “oh” for 0.

- How to place a call using a stored nametag

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Call”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say the stored nametag.

STEP 3 The system responds with “Calling [nametag]”.

- How to hear a list of your stored nametags

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Directory”.

STEP 2 The system will list your nametags.

- ▶ Dialing the last number you called (“Redial”)

You can dial the last number you called by using the “Redial” feature.

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Redial”.

STEP 2 The system will respond with “Redialing [#]”.

- ▶ Dialing a number a Lexus Link Advisor downloaded to your vehicle

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Number recall”.

STEP 2 The system will respond with “Connecting to number recall”.

■ Receiving a call

When someone calls you, you will hear a ring tone. Press the  button to answer the call.

If you do not answer within 30 seconds, the system will terminate the incoming call.

■ Ending a call

When your call is finished, press the  button to end the call.

3-6. Other interior features

■ Accessing voicemail and sending number tones to an automated phone system

You can access a voicemail system and respond to a number request from an automated phone system. When you receive the request for a number while in a call, press the  button after saying the numbers one at a time, say “Dial”.

If you do not say any commands within 5 seconds after pressing the button, or if you press the button twice, the system cannot receive the number tones you are trying to send. Press the button to try again.

■ How to retrieve your phone number

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “My number”.

STEP 2 The system responds with “Your number is [#]”.

If the response is “Personal calling unavailable”, this means your personal calling feature is not yet active, this may take a few days from vehicle delivery. It could also mean that the personal calling service is not available in your area. Press the  button to check with an Advisor. Now that you have your number, take a moment to practice by making your first call to your home phone. Remember, the system recognizes numbers better when you say them quickly.

■ Verifying remaining units (minutes)

- ▶ To verify remaining minutes

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Verify”.

STEP 3 The system responds with “You have [#] units remaining”.

- ▶ To add more calling units (minutes)

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Add”.

STEP 3 The system responds with “Connecting to the Personal Calling Center”.

■ Security code/locking your system

The personal calling function can be locked using a 4-digit security code. While the system is locked, it is only possible to communicate with the Lexus Link Call Center.

To turn on/off the security

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Security”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Enter first digit of code please”, say your 4-digit code one digit at a time.

STEP 3 After the fourth digit, the system responds with “Security (code ####) is now on/off”.

3-6. Other interior features

■ Speech recognition information

The Lexus Link speech recognition systems use speech technology that is designed to understand a wide range of speakers of American English. However, the technology may not work as well if a regional or ethnic accent is encountered. If the speech recognition system does not work properly, refer to the following.

- The system does not recognize your command properly if noise is present. Perform the following to improve voice command recognition.
 - Turn down or off the air conditioning system.
 - Slow down to reduce wind noise.
 - Close the windows and the moon roof to block outside noise.
 - Have all occupants be quiet so that the system does not recognize their conversation as a command.
- When to speak
Say a command within 5 seconds after the system prompts you to speak.
- How to speak
 - Speak forcefully and clearly.
 - Speak calmly and naturally.
 - The driver should speak while facing forward, and the passenger should speak facing the inside rear view mirror.
 - Avoid speaking with a rising intonation. Use a flat or falling intonation.
- Tips for one-word commands
 - The system recognizes only one word at a time for personal calling. (There are some exceptions, such as “Advanced services” and “My number”.)
 - When inputting the security codes or voice-activated keypad number, you must say them one digit at a time. When inputting a phone number, the speech recognition system can recognize 7, 10, and 11-digit numbers as well as the number 911.

- Tips for entering a phone number using the “Dial” and “Store” commands
 - You do not need to say “Dial”, “Store” or “Verify” after the phone number.
 - If the phone number entered is not 7, 10, or 11 digits, use the “Dial” or “Store” command.
 - Do not pause between the digits.
 - Speech recognition does not recognize the words “Hundred” or “Thousand”. Instead, say each digit.
 - Speech recognition often works better when the digits are combined smoothly into a single phrase.
 - If the system does not recognize your command properly, use the “Digit dial” command to enter one digit at a time.
- If problems continue
 - Say each one of the syllables in the word clearly.
 - Be sure to articulate each sound in the word.
 - If the system is confusing 2 commands that are similar, be sure to pronounce the distinction.
 - Avoid clipping short words and syllables.
 - Try speaking louder to prevent background noise from drowning out your voice.
- Audible voice prompts

Some of the voice guidance instructions can be changed to Spanish. Press the  button and ask a Lexus Link Advisor.

■ Information on Advanced services

See the Lexus Link area of the Lexus website at www.lexus.com/lexuslink/ or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987)(toll free) for more information.

■ Certification for the Lexus Link System

FCC ID: SCWTR-423-A2

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3-6. Other interior features

■ Lexus Link transceiver antenna



- Before using an automatic car wash, disconnect the antenna by unscrewing it from the roof mount. When you remove the antenna, make sure the engine switch is turned off.

- Use only the supplied or an approved antenna. Unauthorized antennas, modifications, or attachments could damage the Lexus Link System and may violate FCC regulations.

⚠ CAUTION

■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications in construction not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This device is approved for Mobile Application only and, to comply with applicable FCC radio frequency exposure regulations, must be used with a distance of at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) between the antenna and the body of any person at all time during use.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

Persons using medical devices such as a pacemaker should not touch or come in close contact with the antenna while the vehicle engine switch is on. Otherwise, the cellular signals may cause a malfunction in the medical devices.

 NOTICE

■ **To avoid damage to the system**

- Do not touch the antenna unless necessary, as this may affect transceiver quality and may cause the unit to operate at a higher power level than necessary.
- Make sure the antenna is removed before driving through an automatic car wash.

■ **To ensure the Lexus Link System functions correctly**

Be sure to reattach the Lexus Link transceiver antenna.

3-6. Other interior features

4-1. Maintenance and care

- Cleaning and protecting
the vehicle exterior 314
- Cleaning and protecting
the vehicle interior 317

4-2. Maintenance

- Maintenance
requirements..... 320
- General maintenance..... 322
- Emission inspection and
maintenance (I/M)
programs 325

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

- Do-it-yourself service
precautions..... 326
- Hood..... 329
- Engine compartment 330
- Tires..... 345
- Tire inflation pressure..... 352
- Wheels..... 356
- Air conditioning filter 358
- Wireless remote control
battery..... 360
- Rear seat entertainment
system controller 362
- Checking and replacing
fuses 364
- Light bulbs..... 374

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.

Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.

- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- If water no longer beads on clean paint, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rain-sensing windshield wipers (if equipped): Turn the wipers off before washing the vehicle. (→P. 141)

■ High pressure automatic car washes

Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows. Before entering an automatic car wash, check that the fuel filler door is closed.

■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
 - If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

CAUTION

■ Caution about the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.
When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

4-1. Maintenance and care

NOTICE

■ **To protect your vehicle's painted surfaces**

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

■ **If the windshield washer nozzle becomes blocked**

Contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clean it with a pin or other object, as this may damage the nozzle.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

■ **When using an automatic car wash
(vehicles equipped with the rain-sensing windshield wipers)**



Set the wiper switch to "OFF".
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in shaded and ventilated area.

■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

4-1. Maintenance and care

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. The excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet.
(→P. 77)
Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning detergents**

Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
- Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus service and repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Hazardous materials**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 342)
- Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

4-2. Maintenance

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	• Maintenance-free (→P. 342)
Brake fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 339)
Engine coolant	• At the correct level? (→P. 337)
Engine oil	• At the correct level? (→P. 332)
Exhaust system	• No fumes or strange sounds?
Power steering fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 340)
Radiator/condenser/hoses	• Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 338)
Washer fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 344)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in "P"?
Brake pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulls to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Function properly?
Lights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do all the lights come on?
Parking brake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

4-2. Maintenance

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Inflation pressure is correct?• Tire surfaces not worn or damaged?• Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule?• Wheel nuts are not loose?

CAUTION

■ If the engine is running

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

4-2. Maintenance

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

■ When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 342)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Warm water• Baking soda• Grease• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 339)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid• Rag or paper towel• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level (→P. 337)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 332)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 364)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Power steering fluid level (→P. 340)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON[®] II or III • Rag or paper towel • Clean funnel
Radiator and condenser (→P. 338)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 352)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 344)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use) • Funnel

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, inverter, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is in "LOCK".

With the engine switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 338)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

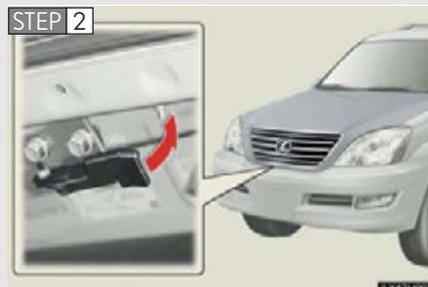
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.



Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

4

Maintenance and care

CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

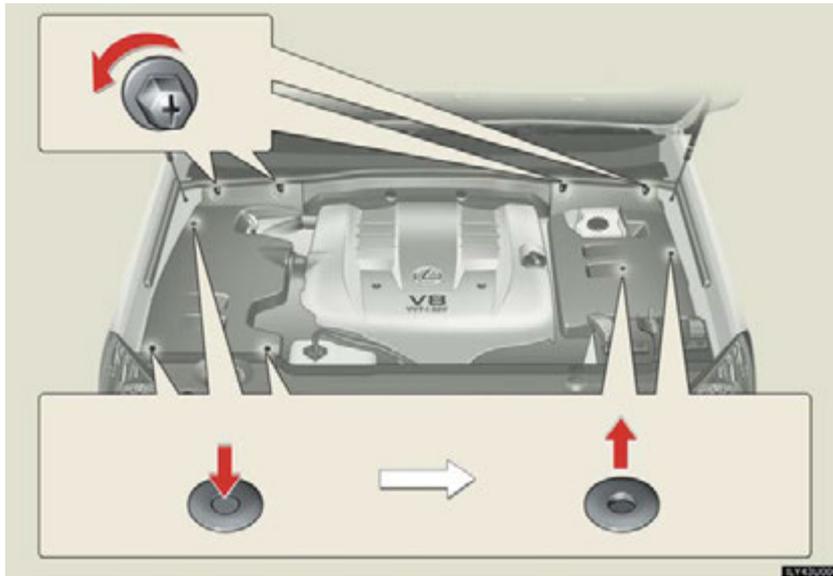
Engine compartment



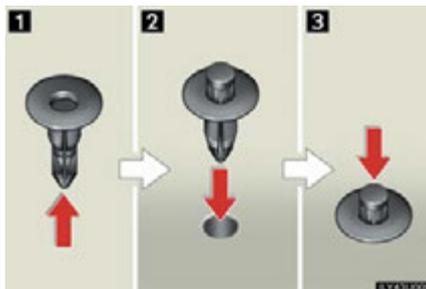
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Engine oil level dipstick
(→P. 332) | 6 Condenser (→P. 338) |
| 2 Engine oil filler cap
(→P. 333) | 7 Electric cooling fan |
| 3 Brake fluid reservoir
(→P. 339) | 8 Engine coolant reservoir
(→P. 337) |
| 4 Fuse box (→P. 364) | 9 Radiator (→P. 338) |
| 5 Battery (→P. 342) | 10 Washer fluid tank (→P. 344) |
| | 11 Power steering fluid reservoir
(→P. 340) |

Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the covers



■ Installing the clips



- 1 Push up center portion
- 2 Insert
- 3 Press

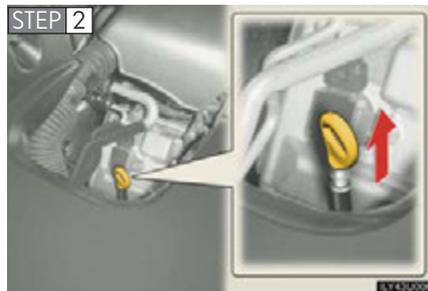
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine wait more than five minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



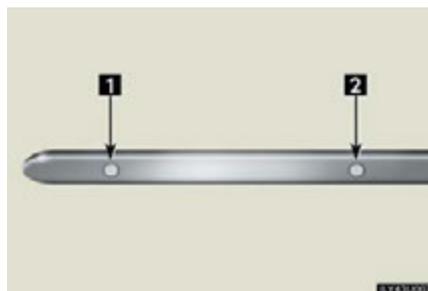
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low

2 Full

■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

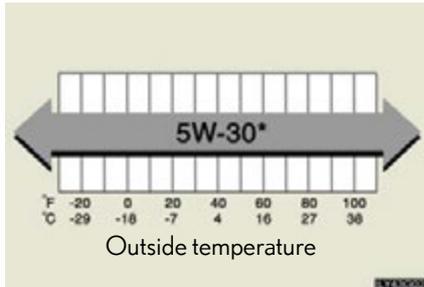
STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise until you hear a click.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Recommended viscosity



SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

*: If SAE 5W-30 oil is not available, SAE 10W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.

■ How to read oil container labels

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km). If the vehicle consumes more than this amount, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Resetting the engine oil maintenance data (U.S.A. only)

Perform the following steps:

- STEP 1** Switch the display to the odometer. (→P. 129)
- STEP 2** Turn the engine switch to the "LOCK" position.
- STEP 3** Turn the engine switch to the "ON" position with the trip meter reset button held down.
- STEP 4** Keep pressing the knob until the "MAINT REQD" light goes off. If the light continues flashing, return to STEP 1 and try again.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

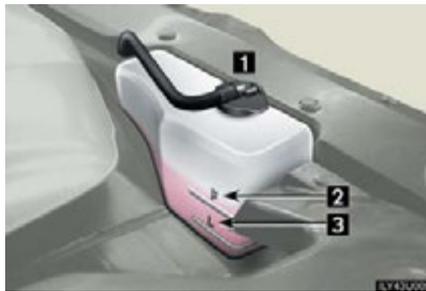
Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly retightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



- 1 Reservoir cap
- 2 Full
- 3 Low

If the level is on or below the “L” line, add coolant up to the “F” line.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

NOTICE

■ When adding the coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

■ The radiator and condenser may be hot after driving

To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser after driving.

Brake fluid

■ **Checking fluid level**



The brake fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

■ **Adding fluid**

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

4

■ **Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air**

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When filling the reservoir**

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
 If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.
 If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

Maintenance and care

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

NOTICE

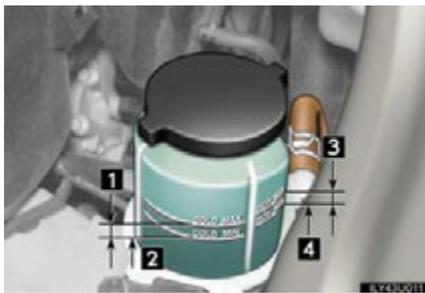
■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Power steering fluid

■ Fluid level

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



- 1 Full (when cold)
- 2 Add fluid (when cold)
- 3 Full (when hot)
- 4 Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: The vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C]).

Cold: The engine has not been run for about 5 hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C]).

■ Checking the fluid level

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper, clean funnel (only for adding fluid)

- STEP 1** Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
- STEP 2** Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.
- STEP 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.
- STEP 4** Reinstall and remove the reservoir cap again.
- STEP 5** Check the fluid level.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When checking the reservoir
Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding fluid
Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

■ After replacing the reservoir cap
Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

4

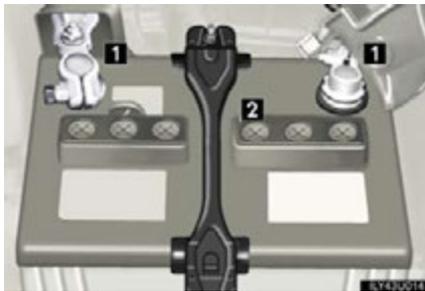
Maintenance and care

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Battery

■ Exterior

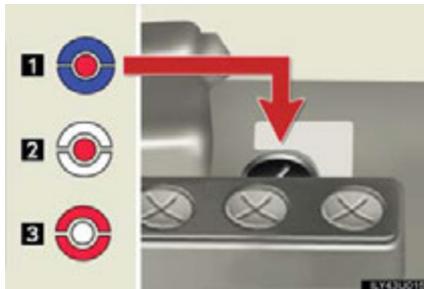
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



- 1 Terminals
- 2 Hold-down clamp

■ Checking condition

Check the battery condition by the indicator color.



Blue: Good.

White: Charging is necessary.
Have the vehicle inspected
by your Lexus dealer.

Red: Not working properly, have
the battery checked by your
Lexus dealer.

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Chemicals in the battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and seek immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Seek emergency medical attention immediately.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid



If a washer does not work, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

■ When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

■ Checking tires

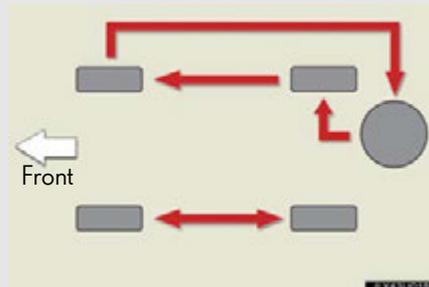


- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “Δ” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

■ Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

Lexus recommends tire rotation in accordance with the maintenance schedule to equalize tire wear and extend tire life.

■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 396)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer.

Registering and selecting ID codes

■ Registering ID codes

2 sets of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes can be registered. Once a second set of tires is registered at "2nd", you can switch between tire set settings simply by pressing the tire pressure warning select switch.

There are 2 settings:

"MAIN" position: The ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter on the tires originally installed on the vehicle is registered.

"2nd" position: The code is not registered. When you replace a new set of tires, purchase tire pressure warning valves and transmitters from your Lexus dealer and have the new ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ Selecting ID codes

When replacing tires, make sure to select the ID code set that matches the new tire set. If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to the wrong setting, the tire pressure warning system will not operate properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.



1 "MAIN"

2 "2nd"

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 352, 425).

■ Tire types**1 Summer tires**

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 179)

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ If the tire pressure select switch is set to the wrong tire setting

The system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

FCC ID: PAXPMV107J

FCC ID: HYQ13BCG

IC ID: 3729A-PMV107J

IC ID: 1551A-13BCG

► For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

 NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ **To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tire inflation pressure

■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 432)



■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



- 1 Tire valve
- 2 Tire pressure gauge

- STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.
- STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.
- STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.
- STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.
- STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.
- STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

 CAUTION

■ **Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

 NOTICE

■ **When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened
- Lexus wheels with after market chrome plating

■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 346)

 CAUTION

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

 NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

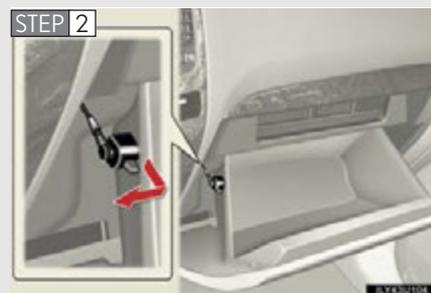
- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the "LOCK" position.



Open the glove box and unhook the clip.

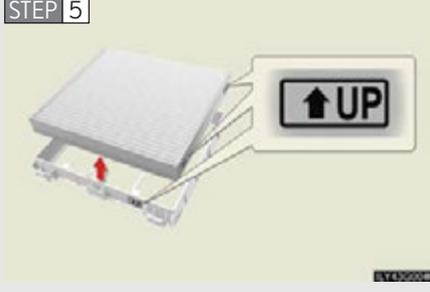


Push in each side of the glove box to disconnect the claws.



Remove the filter case.

STEP 5



Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

■ **Changing interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance”.)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Wireless remote control battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1616)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



Remove the screw and cover.

Push the cover in the arrow direction.

STEP 2



Remove the module.

STEP 3



Remove the 2 screws to take out the lid.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use a CR1616 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children.
These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

 **NOTICE**

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Rear seat entertainment system controller

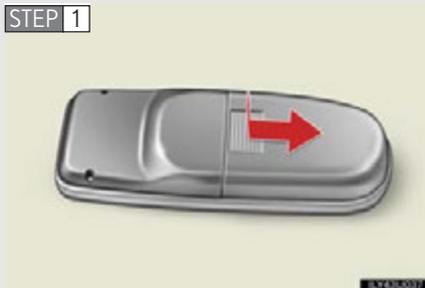
Replace the batteries if they are discharged.

■ Necessary items

3 AA batteries

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



Remove the cover.

STEP 2



Remove the depleted batteries and install the new batteries.

■ If the batteries are discharged

The following symptoms may occur.

- The rear seat entertainment system control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ Use 3 AA batteries

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

 CAUTION

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children.
These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

 NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

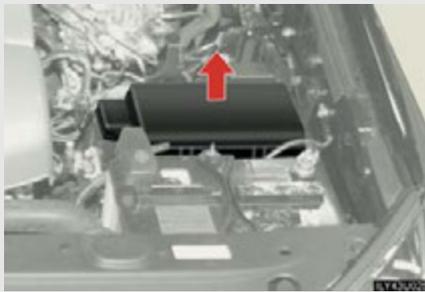
Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the “LOCK” position.

STEP 2 Open the fuse box cover.

► Engine compartment



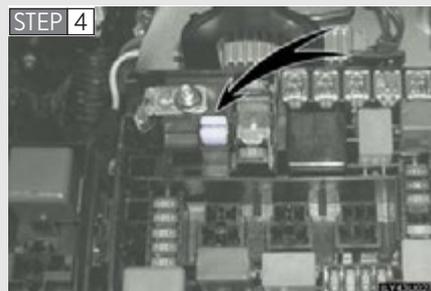
Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

► Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

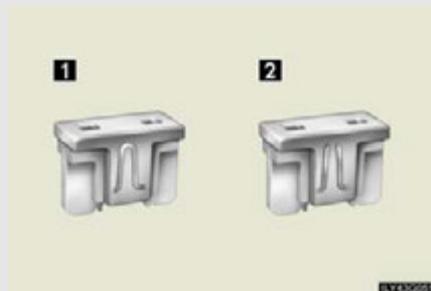
STEP 3 After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 366) for details about which fuse to check.



Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

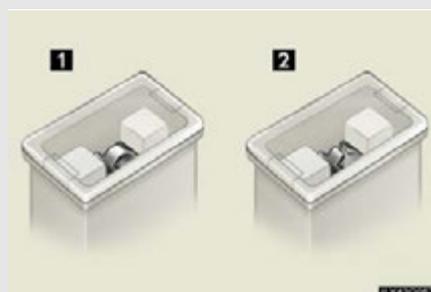
► Type A



- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

► Type B



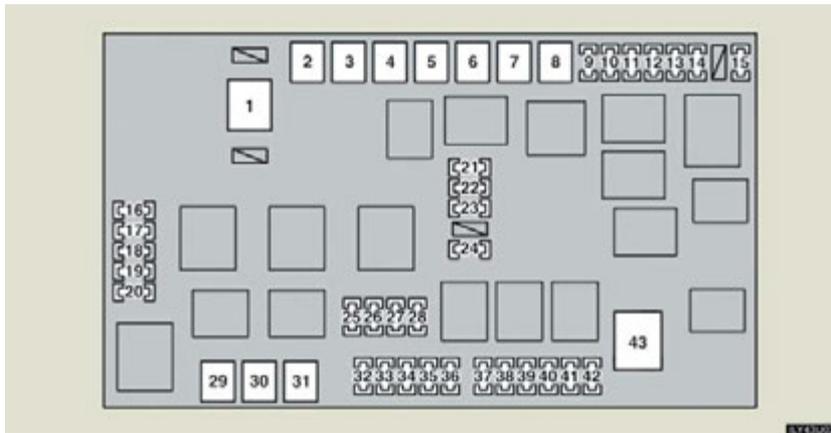
- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment



Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1 ALT	140	Charging system, AM1, HEATER, CDS FAN, FR FOG, DEFOG, AIR SUS, AC INV, SEAT HEATER, OBD, STOP, J/B, RR AC, MIR HEATER, BATT CHG, TOWING BRK, TOWING
2 HEATER	50	Air conditioning system
3 AIR SUS	50	Rear height control air suspension
4 AM1	50	ACC, CIG, IG1, FR WIP-WSH, RR WIP, RR WSH, DIFF, ECU-IG, TEMS, STA
5 TOWING BRK	30	Trailer brake controller
6 J/B	50	P FR P/W, P RR P/W, D RR P/W, D P/SEAT, P P/SEAT, TAIL, PANEL, POWER OR TI&TE
7 BATT CHG	30	Trailer sub battery

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
8	TOWING	40	Trailer lights
9	CDS FAN	20	Electric cooling fan
10	RR A/C	30	Rear air conditioning system
11	MIR HEATER	10	Outside rear view mirror defogger
12	STOP	10	Stop lights, high mounted stoplight, shift lock control system, vehicle stability control system, electronic modulated suspension, rear height control air suspension, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
13	AC INV	15	Power outlet (115V AC)
14	FR FOG	15	Front fog lights
15	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
16	HEAD (LO RH)	10	Right hand headlight (low beam)
17	HEAD (LO LH)	10	Left hand headlight (low beam)
18	HEAD (HI RH)	10	Right hand headlight (high beam)
19	HEAD (HI LH)	10	Left hand headlight (high beam)
20	EFI NO.2	10	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
21	HEATER No.2	7.5	Air conditioning system
22	DEFOG	30	Rear window defogger
23	AIRSUS NO.2	10	Rear height control air suspension
24	SEAT HEATER	20	Seat heaters

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
25	DOME	10	Engine switch light, interior lights, personal lights, foot lights, running board lights, door courtesy lights, inside door handle lights, trip information display
26	RADIO NO.1	20	Audio system, navigation system
27	ECU-B	10	Multiplex communication system, vehicle stability control system, wireless remote control system, inside rear view mirror, air conditioning system, electronic modulated suspension, driving position memory system, power windows, moon roof, rear view monitor system
28	ECU-B NO.2	10	Theft deterrent system
29	ABS MTR	40	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, active traction control system, brake assist system
30	AM2	30	Starting system, IGN, SRS, GAUGE, ST2
31	ABS SOL	30	Anti-lock brake system, vehicle stability control system, active traction control system, brake assist system
32	ALT-S	7.5	Charging system
33	MAYDAY	7.5	Lexus Link System
34	HORN	10	Horns

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

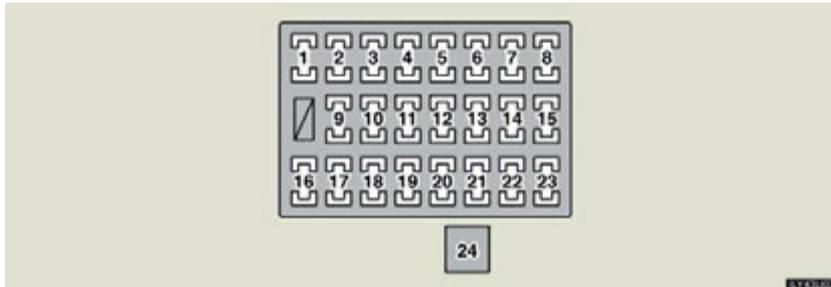
	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
35	A/F HEATER	15	A/F sensor
36	TRN-HAZ	15	Turn signal lights
37	ETCS	10	Electronic throttle control system
38	EFI	20	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
39	D FR P/W	20	Power window
40	DR/LCK	25	Power door lock
41	TOWING	30	Towing converter
42	RADIO NO.2	30	Audio system, navigation system
43	A/PUMP	50	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system

4

Maintenance and care

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Driver's side instrument panel



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	IGN	10	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, vehicle stability control sys- tem
2	SRS	10	SRS airbag system, front passenger occupant classification system
3	GAUGE	7.5	Gauges and meters
4	ST2	7.5	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
5	FR WIP-WSH	30	Windshield wipers, windshield washer
6	TEMS	20	Electronic modulated suspension
7	DIFF	20	Four-wheel drive system
8	RR WIP	15	Rear window wiper
9	D P/SEAT	30	Driver's power seat
10	P P/SEAT	30	Front passenger's power seat
11	PWR OUTLLET	15	Power outlet (12V DC)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
12	IG1NO.2	10	Rear air conditioning system, inside rear view mirror, kinetic dynamic suspension system
13	RR WSH	15	Rear window washer
14	ECU-IG	10	Shift lock control system, power windows, outside rear view mirror defogger, anti-lock brake system, active traction control system, vehicle stability control system, air conditioning system, navigation system, power windows, moon roof, tilt and telescopic steering, trip information display, driving position memory system, rear view monitor system, tire pressure warning system
15	IG1	10	Air conditioning system, back-up lights, rear window defogger, seat heaters, vehicle stability control system
16	STA	7.5	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
17	P FR P/W	20	Front passenger's power window
18	P RR P/W	20	Rear right side power window
19	D RR P/W	20	Rear left side power window
20	PANEL	10	Instrument panel lights
21	TAIL	10	Parking lights, tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
22	ACC	7.5	Shift lock control system, power outlet, outside rear view mirror, audio system, navigation system, power rear view mirrors, trip information display, rear view monitor system
23	CIG	10	Cigarette lighter
24	POWER OR TI&TE	30	Power windows, moon roof, tilt and telescopic steering

■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 374)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

 CAUTION

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

- Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.
- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

 NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

- **Prepare a replacement light bulb.**

Check the wattage and color of the light bulb being replaced.
(→P. 433)

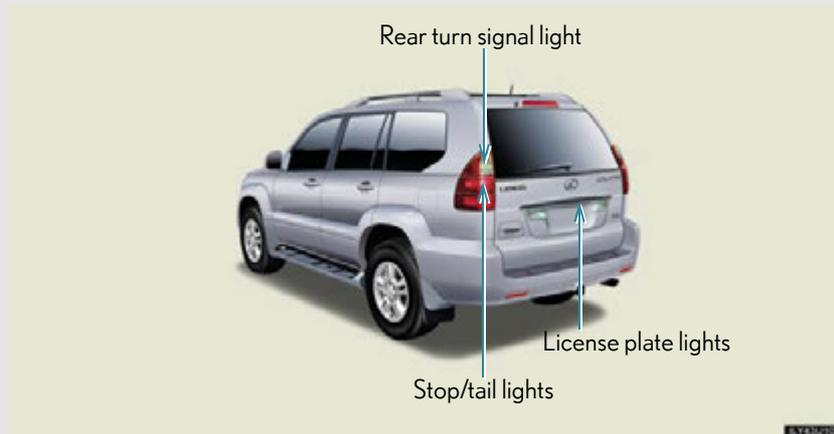
- **Remove the engine compartment cover if necessary.**

→P. 331

- **Front bulb locations**



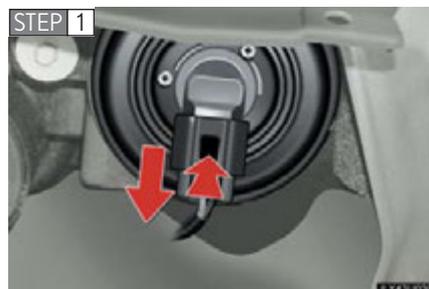
■ Rear bulb locations



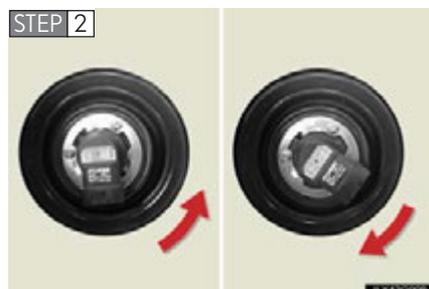
Replacing light bulbs

4

■ Headlight low and high beam



Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise to remove it.

Maintenance and care

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

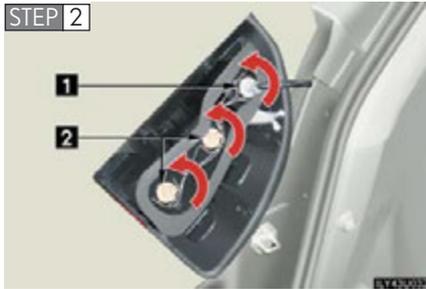
■ Rear turn signal, stop/tail lights

STEP 1



Open the back door and remove the screws.

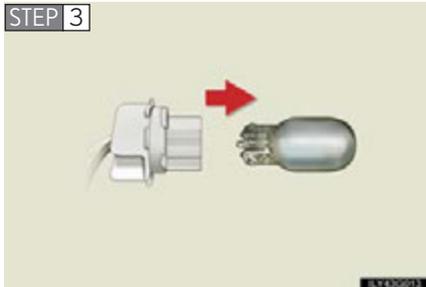
STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

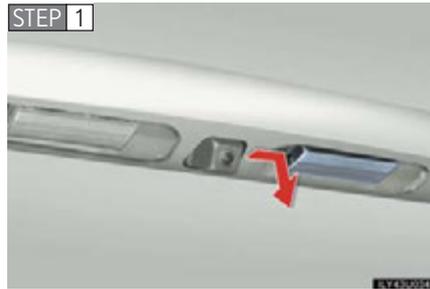
- 1 Turn signal light
- 2 Stop/tail lights

STEP 3

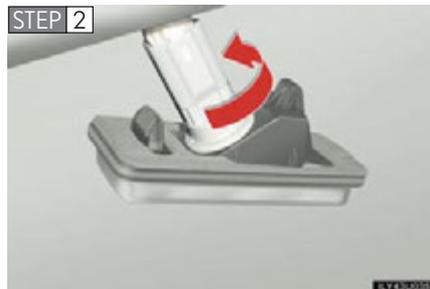


Remove the light bulb.

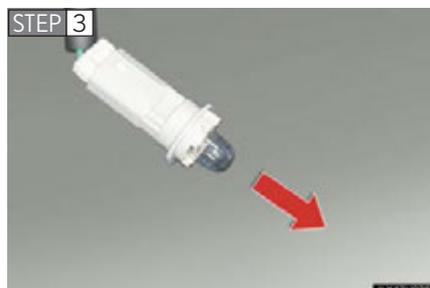
■ License plate light



Remove while pressing from the side.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulbs.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Bulbs other than the above

If any of the bulbs listed below has burnt out, have your Lexus dealer replace it.

- Fog lights
- Parking lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Back-up lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ LED light bulbs

The high mounted stoplights consist of a number of LEDs. If any LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

If two or more LEDs in a stoplight burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (SAE).

 CAUTION

■ **Replacing light bulbs**

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
Doing so may result in serious injury due to electric shock.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 382
If your vehicle needs to be
towed 383
If you think something is
wrong 388
Fuel pump shut off system ... 389
Event data recorder 390

**5-2. Steps to take in an
emergency**

If a warning light turns on
or a warning buzzer
sounds..... 392
If you have a flat tire..... 402
If the engine will not start 413
If the shift lever cannot be
shifted from P 414
If you lose your keys 415
If the vehicle battery is
discharged 416
If your vehicle overheats 419
If the vehicle becomes
stuck..... 422

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.



Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, push the switch once again.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition.

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

5-1. Essential information

▶ Towing eyelets



■ Emergency towing procedure

- STEP 1** Release the parking brake.
- STEP 2** Put the shift lever in "N".
- STEP 3** The engine switch must be in the "ACC" position (engine off) or the "ON" position (engine on).

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and the cable or chain.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.
- Put the vehicle height in the "N" (normal) mode and push the height control "OFF" switch to turn off rear height control air suspension. Otherwise the automatic leveling function may adjust the vehicle height unexpectedly, resulting in an accident.

⚠ NOTICE

- **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**
Never tow this vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

Towing with a sling-type truck



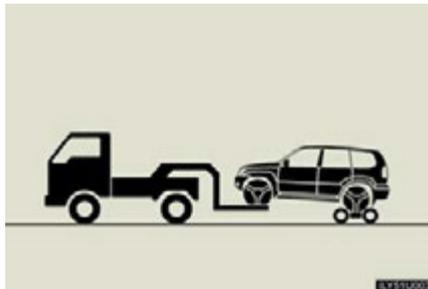
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.

Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

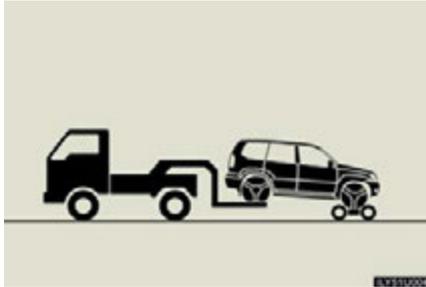
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

5-1. Essential information

► From rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

NOTICE

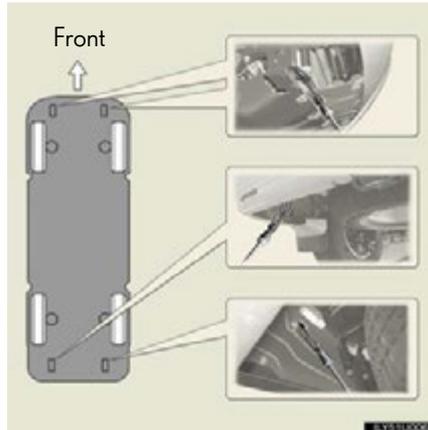
■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from rear with front wheels on the ground.

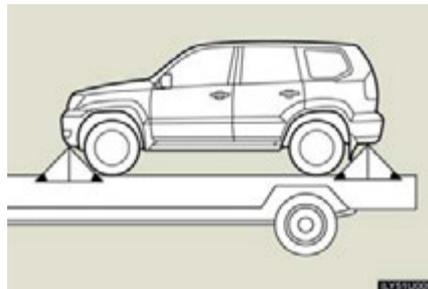
■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

- Do not tow the vehicle with the engine switch in the “LOCK” position. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheel straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

5-1. Essential information

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

5-1. Essential information

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

- Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch to the "ACC" or "LOCK" position.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

- **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

5-1. Essential information

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is an event data recorder (EDR) that records data in a crash or a near car crash event.

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- Front passenger's occupant classification
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)	Brake system warning light <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Low brake fluid• Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.
 (Canada)	

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	<p>Charging system warning light</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system while the engine is running.</p>
	<p>Low engine oil pressure warning light</p> <p>Indicates an abnormal level of engine oil pressure. This warning light may turn on if the level of engine oil declines. The light should turn off after checking the oil and adding oil if necessary.</p>

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	<p>Malfunction indicator lamp</p> <p>Malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The emission control system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system.
	<p>SRS warning light</p> <p>Malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	ABS warning light Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ABS; or • The brake assist system.
	VSC/TRAC warning light Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The VSC; • The active traction control system; • The downhill assist control system; or • The hill-start assist control system.
	Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high.
	Unengaged "Park" warning light Malfunction in the transmission "Park" mechanism.
	Kinetic dynamic suspension system warning light Malfunction in the kinetic dynamic suspension system.

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light A door or a back door is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the back door are closed.
	Low fuel level warning light Remaining fuel (Approximately 2.9 gal. [11 L, 2.4 Imp.gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
	Low washer fluid warning light Low level of washer fluid.	Fill the tank.
	Engine oil replacement reminder light	
	Illuminates for about 3 seconds and then flashes for about 12 seconds: The engine oil is scheduled to be changed.	Check the engine oil, and change if necessary.
	Comes on and remains on: The engine oil should be changed.	Check and change the engine oil.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)* Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (on the center panel)	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)* Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.	Adjust the tire inflation pressure.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

*: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is your vehicle low on gas?
If it is, refuel the vehicle immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front airbag sensors
- The curtain shield airbag sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensors
- The occupant detection system (ECU and sensors)
- "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
- The driver's seat position sensor
- The driver's seat belt buckle switch
- Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
- The inflators
- The warning light
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will become inoperative in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to a different tire setting.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may become inoperative in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use genuine Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently**

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)**

Make sure to reset the oil maintenance data. (→P. 335)

 **CAUTION**

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

■ Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

 **CAUTION****■ Maintenance of the tires**

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

 **NOTICE****■ Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Turn off the rear height control air suspension. (→P. 152)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



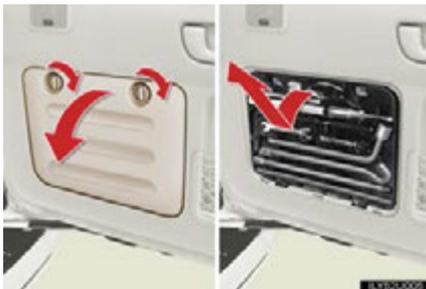
Taking out the jack and tools

▶ Jack



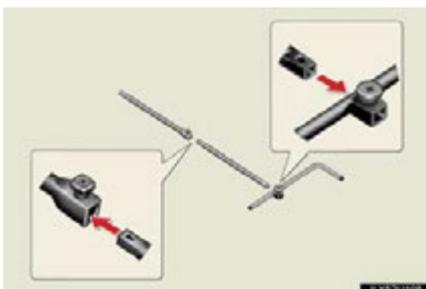
Remove the jack compartment cover and take out the jack.

▶ Tools



Remove the tool tray compartment cover and take out the tool tray.

▶ Jack handle

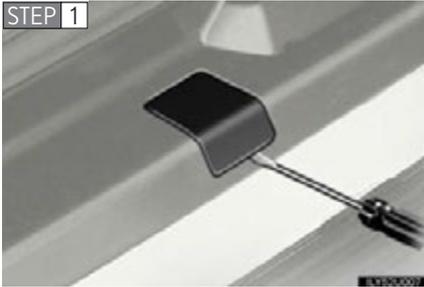


Assemble the jack handle extension as shown. Be sure to tighten each bolt securely.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1



Remove the spare tire carrier lid using a flathead screwdriver.

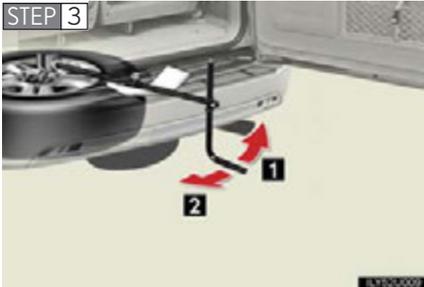
STEP 2



Insert the jack handle extension into the lowering socket.

Place a rag under the jack handle extension to protect the bumper.

STEP 3



- 1 Lower
- 2 Raise

Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.

Vehicles with kinetic dynamic suspension: If the spare tire becomes caught on the suspension components, raise the tire, pull it towards the rear of the vehicle, and begin lowering it again.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

Replacing a flat tire



Chock the tires.

	Flat tire	Wheel chock position
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

5

When trouble arises

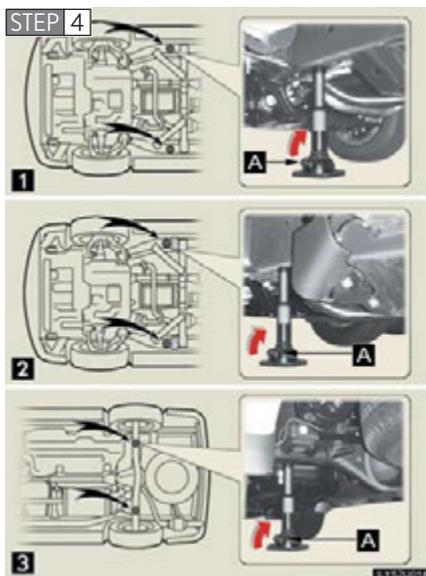
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Remove the wheel ornament using the wheel nut wrench as shown.



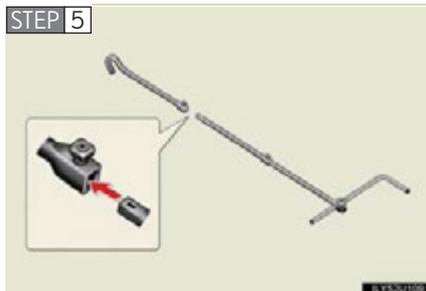
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



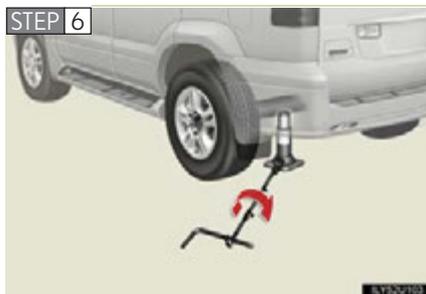
Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the head of the jack is in contact with the appropriate jack point.

- 1 Front (vehicles without kinetic dynamic suspension)
- 2 Front (vehicles with kinetic dynamic suspension)
- 3 Rear

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Attach the hooked jack handle end to the jack handle extension as shown.



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

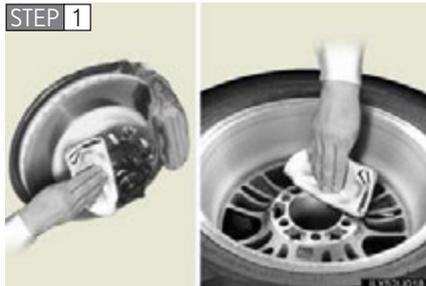
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Installing the spare tire



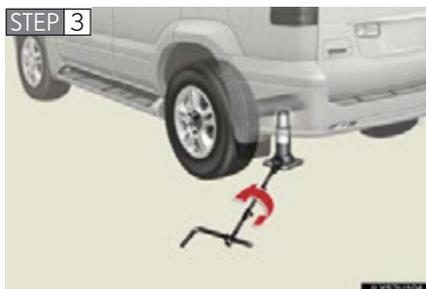
Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.



Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.



Lower the vehicle.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.5 kgf•m)



Reinstall the wheel ornament.

Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools



Lay down the tire with the outer side facing up, and install the holding bracket.

STEP 2 Raise the tire.

Vehicles with kinetic dynamic suspension: Pull the tire towards the rear of the vehicle when raising. After raising, visually check that the tire is not interfering with suspension components.

STEP 3 Stow the tools and jack securely, and replace all covers.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the rear height control air suspension and stop the engine.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using a Phillips-head screwdriver, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

 CAUTION

■ **Replacing a flat tire**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

- Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
- Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident.
Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.5 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ When stowing the flat tire

- Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.
- Vehicles with kinetic dynamic suspension: To avoid damaging the suspension system, make sure that the spare tire does not interfere with the suspension components when stowed.

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 120), consider each of the following points.

■ **The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
Add fuel to the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 120)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.
(→P. 70)

■ **The starter motor turns over slowly, interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 416)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ **The starter motor does not turn over, interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 416)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the engine switch to the "ON" position.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made and programmed to your vehicle by your Lexus dealer, using one of the master keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

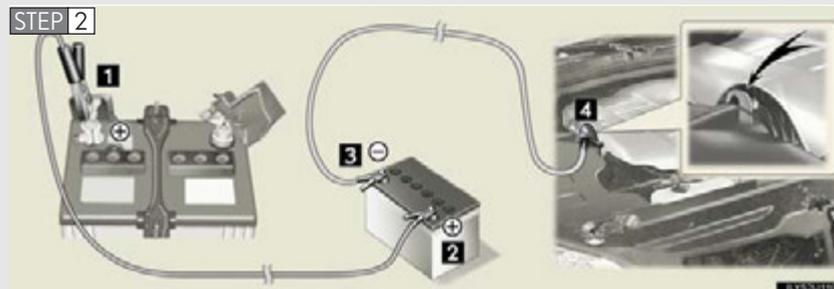
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

You can call your Lexus dealer, or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12 volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus by following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood.



Connecting the jumper cables.

- 1** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
- 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 3** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 4** Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12 volt battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start your vehicle's engine.

STEP 5 Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The vehicle cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

The power windows and moon roof must be initialized.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

If the engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

STEP 4



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the coolant level and inspect the radiator for any leaks.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

STEP 5



Add coolant if required.

Water can be used as an emergency measure if coolant is unavailable. (→P. 428)

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

In the following situations, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and engine drive belt while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cold coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

- STEP 1** Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "P".
- STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
- STEP 3** Place wood, large stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
- STEP 4** Restart the engine.
- STEP 5** Lock the center differential to turn off the vehicle stability control system. (→ P. 150)
- STEP 6** Release the parking brake and shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and racing the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data
(fuel, oil level, etc.) 424
Fuel information 434
Tire information 437

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 449

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 452

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weight

Overall length	188.2 in. (4780 mm)	
Overall width	74.0 in. (1880 mm)	
Overall height *1	73.0 in. (1855 mm) *2	
	74.6 in. (1895 mm) *3	
Wheelbase	109.8 in. (2790 mm)	
Tread	Front	62.4 in. (1585 mm)
	Rear	62.4 in. (1585 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		
With third seat	1200 lb. (544 kg)	
Without third seat	1000 lb. (454 kg)	
Towing capacity	6500 lb. (2948 kg)	

*1: Unladen vehicle

*2: Without roof luggage carrier

*3: With roof luggage carrier

Vehicle identification

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

6-1. Specifications

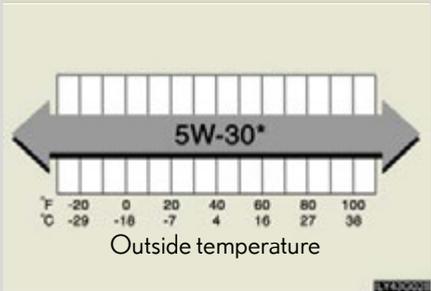
Engine

Model	2UZ-FE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.31 in. (94.0 × 84.0 mm)
Displacement	284.5 cu.in. (4664 cm ³)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity	23 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp.gal)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity drain and refill (reference) with filter without filter	6.5 qt. (6.2 L, 5.5 Imp.qt.) 6.0 qt. (5.7 L, 5.0 Imp.qt.)
Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Recommended oil viscosity	Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the grade and viscosity shown below. 

*:5W-30 is an oil that provides optimal levels of fuel efficiency.

Oil viscosity:

- The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

6-1. Specifications

Cooling system

Capacity (reference)	13.6 qt. (12.9 L, 11.4 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO NGK
	SK20R11 IFR6A11
Gap	0.039 in. (1.0 mm) — 0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the gap when tuning the engine.

Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the key is removed with all the lights turned off.)
Charging rates	5A max.

Differential

Oil capacity	
Front	1.5 qt. (1.4 L, 1.2 Imp.qt.)
Rear	3.3 qt. (3.1 L, 2.7 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL5 or equivalent

“Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” is filled in your Lexus vehicle at factory fill. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.5 qt. (1.4 L, 1.2 Imp.qt.)
Oil type	Hypoid gear oil API GL-5
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W-90

6-1. Specifications

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	11.5 qt. (10.9 L, 9.6 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance * ¹	2.0 in. (52 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake adjustment * ²	5 — 7 clicks
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*¹: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

*²: Parking brake adjustment when depressed with a force of 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf).

Chassis lubrication

Propeller shafts	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2
Spiders	
Slide yoke	

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

6-1. Specifications

Tires and wheels

Tire size	P265/65R17 110S
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	<p>Normal driving</p> <p>Front: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm² or bar)</p> <p>Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm² or bar)</p> <p>Spare: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm² or bar)</p> <p>Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.</p>
Wheel size	17 × 7 1/2 JJ
Wheel nut torque	83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.5 kgf•m)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights (low beam)	—	55	A
	Headlights (high beam)	9005	60	B
	Front turn signal lights	1156NA	27	D
	Parking lights	168	5	C
	Fog lights	—	55	E
	Front side marker light	168	5	C
	Stop/tail lights	7443	21/5	C
	Stop/tail and rear side marker lights	7443	21/5	C
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	D
	Back-up lights	7440	21	C
	Running board lights	194	3.8	C
	License plate lights	168	5	C
Interior	Vanity lights	—	2	F
	Personal lights	—	8	G
	Interior lights	—	8	F
	Door courtesy lights	—	3.8	G
	Glove box light	—	1.2	C

- A: H11 halogen bulbs
 B: HB3 halogen bulbs
 C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
 D: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
 E: H3 halogen bulbs
 F: Double end bulbs
 G: Single end bulbs

6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 3 or 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

6-1. Specifications

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking.
Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

■ Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ When refueling with gasohole

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

6-1. Specifications

Tire information

Typical tire symbols

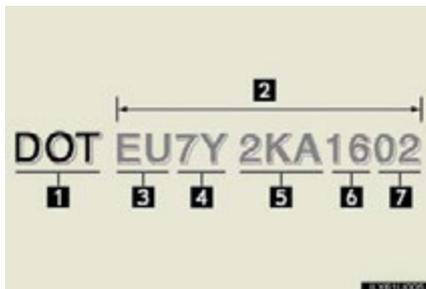


- 1** Tire size (→P. 439)
- 2** DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 438)
- 3** Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 345)
- 4** Tire ply composition and materials
Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.
- 5** Radial tires or bias-ply tires
A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.
- 6** TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE
A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.
- 7** Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 442)
- 8** Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 442)
This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.
- 9** Uniform tire quality grading
For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

6-1. Specifications

- 10 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 349)
An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

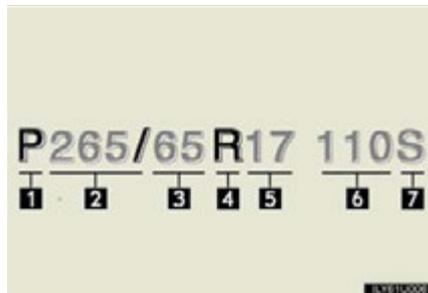


- 1 DOT symbol*
- 2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- 3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- 4 Tire size code
- 5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- 6 Manufacturing week
- 7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

- 1** Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
- 2** Section width (millimeters)
- 3** Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
- 4** Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5** Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6** Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7** Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

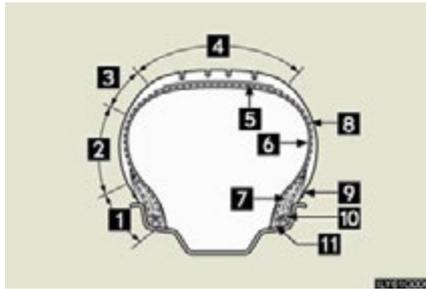
Tire dimensions



- 1** Section width
- 2** Tire height
- 3** Wheel diameter

6-1. Specifications

Tire section names



- 1 Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- 3 Shoulder
- 4 Tread
- 5 Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- 7 Reinforcing rubber
- 8 Carcass
- 9 Rim lines
- 10 Bead wires
- 11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

6-1. Specifications

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight

Tire related term	Meaning
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1 that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing it by two

6-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material

6-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands

Tire related term	Meaning
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow- and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*:Table 1— Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

6-1. Specifications

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 24)	Wireless remote control	ON	OFF
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-steps	All doors unlocked in 1-step
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds
	Operation indicator (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation indicator (Buzzer)	ON	OFF
	Panic function	ON	OFF
	Buzzer sounds when pushing the "LOCK" button with any door not closed.	ON	OFF

6

Vehicle specifications

6-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Door lock (→P. 26)	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-steps	All doors unlocked in 1-step
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON
	Shift the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.	ON	OFF
	Shift the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors.	ON	OFF
Power windows (→P. 61)	Linked door lock operation	ON	OFF
	Linked door key operation	Open and close	Open only
			Close only
Wireless remote control linked operation	ON	OFF	

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Moon roof (→P. 64)	Linked door lock operation	ON	OFF
	Linked door key operation	Open and close	Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when door key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON	OFF
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only	
Automatic light control system (→P. 138)	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Levels 1 to 5
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 seconds
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
Daytime running light	ON	OFF*	
Illumination (→P. 263)	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF
Operation after the engine switch is turned to the "ACC" position	ON	OFF	

*: Vehicles sold outside Canada

6-3. Initialization Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power window	• After reconnecting or changing the battery • After changing a fuse	P. 61
Moon roof		P. 64
Engine oil maintenance data	• After changing engine oil	P. 335
Tire pressure warning system	• When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P. 345

Reporting safety defects for
U.S. owners 452

Seat belt instructions for
Canadian owners
(in French) 453

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité



- 1 Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.
- 2 Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- 3 Réglez la position du dossier du siège. Tenez-vous assis dans le fond du siège, le dos droit.
- 4 Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Entretien et soin

■ Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Les ceintures de sécurité endommagées ne peuvent pas protéger les occupants contre les blessures.

■ Lorsque vous utilisez la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges



N'utilisez pas la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges si l'une des boucles est retirée. Fixer une seule boucle pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de freinage brusque ou de collision.

Index

Abbreviation list 458

Alphabetical index 460

What to do if... 468

For details of equipment related to the navigation system and touch screen, such as the air conditioning, rear view monitor system and audio systems, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Abbreviation list

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-Lock Brake System
ACC	Accessory
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
CAL	Calibration
CRS	Child Restraint System
DAC	Downhill Assist control system
DISP	Display
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event data recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Ratings
GCWR	Gross Combination Weight Rating
GPS	Global Positioning System
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
INT	Intermittent
KDSS	Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LSD	Limited Slip Differential
MMT	Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
M+S	Mud and Snow
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
RDS	Radio Data System
RSCA	Roll Sensing of Curtain Shield Airbag
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Warning System
TRAC	Traction Control
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Alphabetical index

Alphabetical index

- A**
- A/C 198
 - ABS..... 162
 - Active traction control..... 162
 - Air conditioning system
 - Air conditioning filter358
 - Automatic air conditioning system..... 198
 - Airbags
 - Airbag operating conditions.....80
 - Airbag precautions for your child.....85
 - Airbag warning light393
 - Curtain shield airbag precautions 87
 - General airbag precautions 84
 - Locations of airbags.....77
 - Modification and disposal of airbags88
 - Side airbag precautions86
 - Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions80
 - SRS airbags77
 - Alarm 72
 - Antenna 215, 310
 - Armrest.....283
 - Ashtrays.....276
 - Audio system
 - Antenna215
 - CD player/changer218
 - DVD information247
 - DVD player238
 - DVD video/audio.....243
 - MP3/WMA disc225
 - Optimal use.....231
 - Radio.....210
 - Rear seat entertainment system238
 - Steering switches 235
 - Video CD250
 - Automatic light control system..... 138
 - Automatic transmission123
- B**
- Back door31
 - Back-up lights
 - Wattage 433
 - Battery
 - Battery342
 - Checking.....342
 - If the vehicle battery is discharged 416
 - Preparing and checking before winter.....179
 - Brake
 - Fluid.....339
 - Parking brake.....127
 - Brake Assist.....162
- C**
- Care
 - Exterior..... 314
 - Interior..... 317
 - Seat belts318
 - Cargo capacity..... 171
 - Cargo hooks285
 - CD player 218
 - Center differential lock.....150
 - Chains180
 - Child-protectors.....28
 - Child restraint system
 - Definition 95
 - Installation99
 - Installing CRS with lower anchorages.....100
 - Installing CRS with seatbelts102

Installing CRS with top straps.....106

Child safety

Airbag precautions 85

Child restraint system 95

Child-protectors..... 28

How your child should wear
the seatbelt..... 53

Installing child restraints..... 99

Moon roof.....64

Power window lock switch 61

Power window precautions..... 63

Removed battery
precautions361

Seat belt precautions..... 54

Seat heater precautions.....281

Cigarette lighter278

Cleaning

Exterior314

Interior..... 317

Seat belts318

Clock.....273

Compass 293

Condenser..... 338

Cooling system

Engine overheating..... 419

Cruise control145

Cup holders.....269

Curtain shield airbags..... 77

Customizable features449

D **Daytime running light system 139**

Defogger

Rear window 206

Side mirror..... 206

Dimension.....424

Dinghy towing 196

Display

Trip information 135

Do-it-yourself maintenance326

Door courtesy lights263

Door pocket.....270

Doors

Door lock..... 24, 26

Rear door child protector28

Downhill assist control system 160

Driver's seat belt reminder light396

Driving

Correct posture.....75

Procedures 120

DVD player238

E **Electronic modulated
suspension..... 159**

Emergency flashers

Switch.....382

Emergency, in case of

If a warning light turns on.....392

If the engine will not
start..... 413

If the shift lever cannot be
shifted from P414

Alphabetical index

- If the vehicle battery is
 - discharged416
- If you have a flat tire402
- If you lose your keys.....415
- If you think something is
 - wrong.....388
- If your vehicle becomes stuck.... 422
- If your vehicle needs to be
 - towed383
- If your vehicle overheats.....419
- Engine**
 - Compartment330
 - Engine switch.....120
 - Hood.....329
 - How to start the engine.....120
 - If the engine will not
 - start.....413
 - Overheating.....419
- Engine compartment cover** 331
- Engine coolant temperature gauge**..... 129
- Engine coolant**
 - Capacity428
 - Checking337
 - Preparing and checking
 - before winter179
- Engine immobilizer system**.....70
- Engine oil**
 - Capacity427
 - Checking332
 - Preparing and checking
 - before winter179
- Engine oil maintenance data**.....335
- Event data recorder** 390
- F**
 - First-aid kit storage belt**286
 - Flat key**..... 22
 - Floor mats**.....284
 - Fluid**
 - Brake..... 339
 - Power steering340
 - Washer.....344
 - Fog lights**
 - Switch.....140
 - Wattage433
 - Foot light**263
 - Front passenger's seat belt reminder light**396
 - Front passenger occupant classification system**..... 90
 - Front seats**
 - Adjustment34
 - Driving position memory45
 - Front turn signal lights**
 - Wattage433
 - Fuel**
 - Capacity426
 - Fuel gauge.....129
 - Gas station information470
 - Information434
 - Refueling.....67
 - Fuel door**.....67
 - Fuel filler door**67
 - Fuses**.....364

G	Garage door opener.....	288
	Gas station information.....	470
	Gauges.....	129
	Glove box.....	266
H	Hazard lights	
	Switch.....	382
	Head restraints.....	47
	Headlights	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	374
	Switch.....	138
	Wattage.....	433
	Heaters	
	Seat heaters.....	281
	Side mirror.....	206
	Hill-start assist control.....	162
	Hood.....	329
	Hooks	
	Cargo.....	285
	Horn.....	128
I	Illuminated entry system.....	263
	I/M test.....	325
	Indicator lights.....	132
	Initialization	
	Items to initialize.....	452
	Inside rear view mirror.....	58
	Instrument panel light control.....	130
	Interior lights	
	Interior lights.....	263
	Wattage.....	433

J	Jack	
	Replacing the wheel.....	402
	Vehicle-equipped jack.....	402
	Jack handle.....	402
K	Keyless entry.....	24
	Keys	
	If you lose your keys.....	415
	Keyless entry.....	24
	Key number plate.....	22
	Keys.....	22
	Wireless remote control key.....	24
	Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System (KDSS).....	162
L	Lexus Link System.....	297
	Light bulbs	
	Replacing.....	374
	Wattage.....	433
	Lights	
	Emergency flasher Switch.....	382
	Fog light switch.....	140
	Hazard light Switch.....	382
	Headlights switch.....	138
	Interior lights list.....	263
	Replacing light bulbs.....	374
	Turn signal lever.....	126
	Vanity lights.....	272
	Wattage.....	433
	Limited slip differential.....	162
	Luggage cover.....	286

Alphabetical index

- M** Maintenance
 Do-it-yourself maintenance 326
 General maintenance 322
 Maintenance data 424
 Maintenance requirements 320
- Meter
 Instrument panel light control 130
 Meters 129
- Mirrors
 Inside rear view mirror 58
 Side mirror heater 206
 Side mirrors 59
 Vanity mirrors 272
- Moon roof 64
- MP3 disc 225
- O** Odometer 129
- Off-road precautions
 Driving 168
 Vehicle 166
- Oil
 Engine oil 332
- Outside rear view mirrors
 Adjusting and folding 59
 Defogger switch 206
 Driving position memory 45
- Outside temperature display 275
- Overhead console 268
- Overheating, Engine 419
- P** Parking brake 127
- Parking lights
 Replacing light bulbs 374
 Switch 138
 Wattage 433
- Personal lights 263
- Power outlet 279
- Power windows 61
- Q** Quarter window 285
- R** Radiator 338
- Radio 210
- RDS (Radio Date System) 212
- Rear console box 267
- Rear height control
 air suspension 152
- Rear seat entertainment system
 A/V input adapter 255
 Headphone jacks 240
 Remote control 243
- Rear seat
 Folding up the third seat 39
 Removing the third seat 42
 Tumbling the second seat 37
- Rear step bumper 31
- Rear turn signal lights
 Replacing light bulbs 374
 Wattage 433

Rear window defogger..... 206
 Rear window wiper and washer 144
 Replacing
 Fuses..... 364
 Light bulbs 374
 Reporting safety defects for
 U.S. owners 454
 Roof luggage carrier 171

S

Seat belts
 Adjusting the seat belt 49
 Automatic Locking Retractor
 (ALR)..... 52
 Child restraint system
 installation 99
 Cleaning and maintaining
 the seat belts..... 318
 Emergency Locking Retractor
 (ELR)..... 52
 How to wear your seat belt..... 49
 How your child should wear
 the seat belt..... 53
 Pregnant women,
 proper seat belt use..... 53
 Reminder light..... 396
 Seat belt extenders..... 53
 Seat belt pretensioners..... 52
Seat heaters..... 281
 Seating capacity 177

Seats
 Seat adjustment 34
 Adjustment precautions 35
 Child seats/child restraint
 system installation..... 99
 Cleaning..... 317
 Driver's seat position memory 45
 Folding up the third seat..... 39
 Head restraint 47
 Properly sitting in the seat 75
 Seat heaters 281
 Removing the third seat..... 42
 Tumbling the second seat 37
Security indicator..... 133
Service reminder indicators 133
Shift lever
 If the shift lever cannot be
 shifted from P 414
Shift lock system..... 414
Side airbags..... 77
Side marker lights
 Switch..... 138
Side mirror
 Adjusting and folding..... 59
 Mirror position memory..... 45
Spare tire
 Inflation pressure..... 432
 Storage location 402
Spark plug..... 428
Specifications 424
Speedometer 129

Alphabetical index

Steering wheel	
Adjustment.....	57
Audio switches	235
Steering wheel position	
memory.....	45
Storage feature.....	266
Stuck	
If your vehicle becomes stuck....	422
Sun visors	271
Switch	
"2nd STRT" switch	124
Center differential lock switch	150
"DAC" switch	160
Emergency flasher Switch	382
Fog light switch.....	140
Hazard light Switch	382
Height control off switch.....	152
Light switches.....	138
Power door lock switch.....	26
Power window switch.....	61
"RSCA OFF" switch.....	89
Window lock switch	61
Wipers and washer switch.....	141
T Tail lights	
Switch	138
Theft deterrent system	
Alarm.....	72
Theft prevention labels.....	74
Tire inflation pressure	432
Tire information	
Glossary.....	442
Size	439
Tire identification number	438
Uniform Tire Quality Grading....	440

Tires	
Chains.....	180
Checking.....	345
If you have a flat tire	402
Inflation pressure	432
Information	437
Pressure warning system.....	345
Replacing	402
Rotating tires.....	345
Size.....	432
Snow tires.....	181
Tools.....	402
Total load capacity	177
Towing	
Dinghy towing	196
Emergency towing.....	384
Trailer towing	183
Trip information display	135
Trip meter	129
Turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	374
Switch.....	126
Wattage.....	433
V Vanity lights	
Vanity lights.....	272
Wattage.....	433
Vanity mirrors	272
Vehicle identification number	425
Vehicle load limits	177
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)	162

W **Warning buzzers**
 Seat belt reminder396

Warning lights
 "AIR BAG ON/OFF"
 indicators.....133
 Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ...394
 Brake system.....392
 Charging system.....393
 Downhill assist control
 indicator.....133
 Engine oil replacement
 reminder light.....395
 Height control indicator.....133
 Low engine oil pressure.....393
 Low fuel level.....395
 Low washer fluid.....395
 Malfunction indicator lamp393
 Open door395
 Seat belt reminder light396
 SRS airbags.....393
 Tire pressure warning light.....396
 Unengaged "P"394
 "VSC TRAC"394

Warning reflector holder..... 286

Washer
 Checking.....344
 Preparing and checking
 before winter.....179
 Switch.....141

Washing and waxing314

Weight
 Cargo capacity171
 Load limits.....177
 Weight.....424

Wheels356

Window glasses61

Window lock switch61

Windows
 Power windows.....61
 Rear window defogger.....206
 Washer141

Windshield wipers.....141

Winter driving tips.....179

Wireless remote control key
 Locking/Unlocking24
 Replacing the battery.....360

WMA disc225

What to do if... What to do if...

 A tire punctures	P. 402	If you have a flat tire
 The engine does not start	P. 70	Engine immobilizer system
	P. 413	If the engine will not start
	P. 416	If the battery is discharged
 The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 414	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
 The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 419	If your vehicle overheats
 Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
 The key is lost	P. 415	If you lose your keys
 The battery is discharged	P. 416	If the vehicle has a discharged battery
 The doors cannot be locked	P. 26	Doors
 The horn begins to sound	P. 72	Alarm
 The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 422	If the vehicle becomes stuck

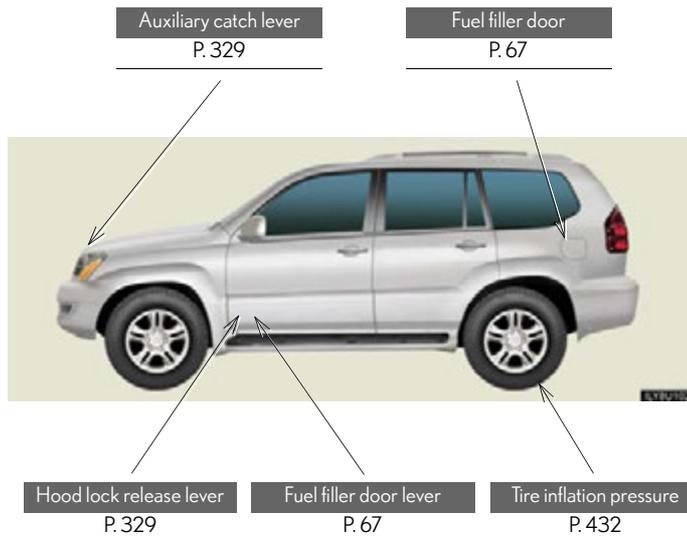
 The warning light or indicator light comes on P. 392 If the warning light turns on



■ Warning lights

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p> Brake system warning light</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 392</p> | <p> Malfunction indicator lamp</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 393</p> |
| <p> ABS warning light</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 394</p> | <p> Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 396</p> <p> Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 396</p> |
| <p> "VSC/TRAC" warning light P. 394</p> | <p> Tire pressure warning light P. 396</p> |
| <p> Low fuel level warning light P. 395</p> | <p> Kinetic dynamic suspension system warning light P. 394</p> |
| <p> SRS warning light P. 393</p> | <p> Automatic transmission fluid temperature warning light P. 394</p> |
| <p> Open door warning light P. 395</p> | <p> Unengaged "Park" warning light P. 394</p> |
| <p> Charging system warning light P. 393</p> | <p> Low washer fluid warning light P. 395</p> |
| <p> Low engine oil pressure warning light P. 393</p> | <p> Engine oil replacement reminder light P. 395</p> |

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity	23 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp.gal.)							
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 68						
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 432						
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill)	<table border="0"> <tr> <td></td> <td>qt. (L, Imp.qt.)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>With filter</td> <td>6.5 (6.2, 5.5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Without filter</td> <td>6.0 (5.7, 5.0)</td> </tr> </table>		qt. (L, Imp.qt.)	With filter	6.5 (6.2, 5.5)	Without filter	6.0 (5.7, 5.0)	
	qt. (L, Imp.qt.)							
With filter	6.5 (6.2, 5.5)							
Without filter	6.0 (5.7, 5.0)							
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE 5W-30	P. 427						